DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 028 675 FL 001 280

A Practical Spanish Grammar for Border Patrol Officers.
Border Patrol Academy, El Paso, Tex.
Spons Agency-Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. Immigration and Naturalization Service.
Report No-GPO-1968-0-295-037
Pub Date 68
Note-231p.
Available from-Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402 (GPO 1968-0-295-037, $1.25)
EDRS Price MF-$1.00 HC Not Available from EDRS.
Descriptors-Crime, Federal Government, Federal Laws, Foreign Relations, Idioms, *Immigration Inspectors, Instructional Materials, *Language Instruction, Language Programs, Legal Problems, Second Language Learning, *Spanish, Special Classes, Special Education, *Textbooks, *Traditional Grammar, Vocabulary
Identifiers-Border Patrol Academy, El Paso, Texas

Designed to be used in the Spanish training program for probationary officers at the Border Patrol Academy in El Paso, Texas, this revised 21-lesson traditional grammar text includes special features that make it pertinent to the job of a patrol inspector in the Mexican border area. An extensive appendix is comprised of exercise translations, useful expressions lists, practice dialogs and readings, vocabulary sections, and a listing of legal and criminal vocabulary. (AF)

ED028675

# A Practical Spanish GRAMMAR

## *FOR BORDER PATROL OFFICERS*

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

**JUSTICE**

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

IMMIGRATION AND NATURALIZATION SERVICE

M-73
(Rev. 1968)

FL 001 280

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U. S. Government Printing Office
Washington 25, D. C. - Price $1.25

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL BY MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U. S. OFFICE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER."

# PREFACE

This grammar was originally written by Messrs. John G. Friar and George W. Kelly while they were Spanish Instructors at the Border Patrol Training School, El Paso, Texas. The book was purposely condensed in order to make its use as a text at the school practical.

Expansion of the Spanish training program for probationary patrol inspectors has made it necessary to enlarge the original text to include additional grammar now taught at the Border Patrol Academy, to eliminate obsolete practice material and to increase the vocabulary section by including words in modern use.

Mr. Kelly rendered valuable assistance and advice to the Spanish instructors at the Border Patrol Academy who made the revision.

The Spanish-English vocabulary includes only the Spanish words used in the text. The English-Spanish vocabulary contains many words that are not in the text, but which should be helpful to patrol officers.

A rather complete list of idiomatic and other useful expressions is included with particular attention to those used along the Mexican border. A long list of words alike, or almost alike, in spelling, and alike in meaning in at least one interpretation is incorporated to assist the student in enlarging his vocabulary, and to show similarity between the Spanish and English languages.

The practice material deals with situations that are of special interest to patrol inspectors. Translations of the exercises in individual lessons are in the Appendix; however, students are urged to make their own independent translations before referring to those in the Appendix.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSON I

Page

The alphabet ........ 1
Diphthongs ........ 6
Syllabication ........ 8
Accentuation ........ 9
Punctuation ........ 10

LESSON II

Parts of Speech ........ 11
  Nouns ........ 11
  Pronouns ........ 12
  Adjectives ........ 13
  Articles ........ 13
  Verbs ........ 14
  Adverbs ........ 14
  Prepositions ........ 15
  Use of preposition "of" to replace adjectival nouns ........ 16
  Conjunctions ........ 17
  Interjections ........ 17

LESSON III

The Spanish sentence ........ 18
  Word order ........ 18
  Negative sentences ........ 18
  The personal "A" ........ 19

LESSON IV

Possession of nouns ........ 20
Possessive adjectives ........ 20
Possessive pronouns ........ 21
Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns ........ 23

LESSON V

Present and indicative tense (regular verbs) ........ 25
"Tomar" and "llevar" ........ 27

LESSON VI

Present indicative tense of irregular verbs ........ 30
"Saber" and "conocer" ........ 30
"Tener" and "traer" ........ 31
Radical changing verbs ........ 31
Interrogative words ........ 33

LESSON VII

Page
Uses of "ser" and "estar" ........ 36
Present participles ........ 37
Progressive action ........ 37

LESSON VIII

"Tener" and "haber" ........ 40
Present perfect tense ........ 40
Irregular past participles ........ 40
Idiomatic use of "hay" ........ 41
Idiomatic use of "tener" ........ 41

LESSON IX

Direct object pronouns ........ 43
Indirect object pronouns ........ 46

LESSON X

Governings verbs ........ 50
Pseudo-governing verbs ........ 51

LESSON XI

Polite command of regular verbs ........ 53
Polite command of irregular verbs ........ 53
Polite command of radical changing verbs ........ 54
Familiar command of regular verbs ........ 56
Familiar command of irregular verbs ........ 56
Familiar command of radical changing verbs ........ 57

LESSON XII

Preterite indicative tense ........ 59
Special uses of certain verbs in the preterite tense ("saber" and "querer") ........ 61
Difference between "salir" and "dejar" ........ 62

LESSON XIII

Uses of "por" and "para" ........ 64
Special construction of verbs with preposition ........ 65

LESSON XIV

Imperfect indicative tense ........ 68
Past progressive tense ........ 69
Requirement of the imperfect tense with certain verbs ........ 69
Pluperfect (past perfect) indicative tense ........ 70
Idiomatic use of "habia" ........ 70

LESSON XV

Page
Numbers .......... 72
  Cardinal numbers .......... 72
  Ordinal numbers .......... 73
Time expressions .......... 74
Calendar divisions .......... 75

LESSON XVI

Passive voice .......... 78
Idiomatic uses of some verbs .......... 80
  "Hacer" .......... 80
  Verbs of perception ("ver" and "oir") .......... 82
  "Gustar" and "faltar" .......... 83

LESSON XVII

Future indicative tense .......... 86
Irregular verbs of the future indicative tense .......... 86
Conditional tense .......... 88
Conditional tense of irregular verbs .......... 88
Conditional perfect tense .......... 89

LESSON XVIII

Reflexive verbs .......... 91
Reflexive pronouns after prepositions .......... 92
Reciprocal verbs .......... 92
Reflexive substitute for passive voice .......... 93

LESSON XIX

Expressions of comparison .......... 95
Absolute superlative .......... 97
Comparison of equality .......... 98
"Sino"—How used .......... 98
"Only"—How expressed .......... 98

LESSON XX

Subjunctive mood .......... 101
  Present subjunctive .......... 101
  Present progressive subjunctive .......... 102
  Present perfect subjunctive .......... 102
  Imperfect subjunctive .......... 102
  Past progressive subjunctive .......... 103
  Pluperfect subjunctive .......... 103
Uses of the subjunctive .......... 103
  After verbs of causing .......... 103
  Expressions of feeling or emotion .......... 105
  Expressions of doubt or denial .......... 106
  Impersonal expressions .......... 106
  After relative pronouns .......... 107
  After conjunctive expressions .......... 108
  In conditions contrary to fact .......... 109

### LESSON XXI

Page
Word study ........................................................ 111
Words similar in English and Spanish ................................ 114
States of Mexico and their abbreviations ............................ 125
Occupations ........................................................ 126

### APPENDIX

Acceptable translations for exercises contained in the text............ 127
Useful expressions ................................................... 142
Practice material .................................................... 145
Spanish names ........................................................ 162
Regular verbs ........................................................ 164
Orthographical changing verbs ....................................... 169
Irregular verbs ...................................................... 171
Radical changing verbs ............................................... 177
Verb list, English-Spanish ........................................... 178
Verb list, Spanish-English ........................................... 183
English-Spanish vocabulary ........................................... 188
Spanish-English vocabulary ........................................... 209
Supplemental vocabulary (legal and criminal) ........................ 223

## LESSON I

## THE ALPHABET

The Spanish alphabet consists of the same letters as the English alphabet and these four additional characters: CH, LL, Ñ, and RR.

**A** Closely resembles "A" in "father."

alto—high
allá—there
aquí—here
mayo—May
allí—there
antes—before

**B** The "B" and "V" are pronounced exactly alike in Spanish. At the beginning of a breath group; that is, after a pause in speech, or the beginning of a sentence, and after the letters "M" or "N" they are pronounced about like the "B" in "book."

bonito—pretty
bajo—low
bien—well
hombre—man
ambos—both
hambre—hunger

At all other times the "B" and "V" are pronounced about like the "V" in "level."

hablar—to speak
haber—to have
abril—April
libro—book
libra—pound
libre—free

**C** Soft like the "S" in "see" before "E" and "I."

centavo—cent
cerca—near
cinco—five
cincuenta—fifty
civil—civil
cicatriz—scar

Hard like "C" in "country" at all other times.

caballo—horse
calle—street
casa—house
comer—to eat
color—color
cuando—when

**CH** Like the "CH" in "church" at all times. This is the first of the Spanish characters that differs from the English. It is found in the dictionary immediately following the "C" and not as in English.

mucho—much, a lot, a great deal
muchacho—boy
chiste—joke
chico—small
choque—wreck
marchar—to march

**D** At the beginning of a breath group and after "L" and "N" it is pronounced about as it is in English with the tongue against the upper front teeth.

donde—where
dar—to give
el día—the day
indio—Indian
mandar—to send
doy—I give

Following other letters about like the "TH" in "they."

madre—mother
padre—father
lado—side
cuidado—care
ciudad[1]—city
usted[1]—you

**E** Has two sounds in Spanish. In open syllables (syllables in which it is the final letter) about like the English long "A"; but without the diphthongal sound often made in English.

leche—milk
café—coffee, brown
enero—January
leña—firewood

In closed syllables (one in which another letter follows) about like the English "E" in "bet."

ser—to be
estar—to be
comer—to eat
el—the
en—in, on, at
entrar—to enter

**F** About as in English.

falta—fault
falso—false
fecha—date
flor—flower
fe—faith
favor—favor

**G** Before the vowels "A," "O," and "U" and all the consonants like the "G" in "go."

ganar—to earn
gasolina—gasoline
gota—drop
gustar—to like
guante—glove
grande—large

Before "E" and "I" the "G" is pronounced like the "H" in "house."

gente—people
agente—agent
giro—draft
gigante—giant

In order to retain the "G" sound of "go" before "E" or "I," it is necessary to insert "U" after the "G," and the "U" is silent.

guía—guide
guerra—war
guerrero—warrior
Guillermo—William

---

[1] Many Spanish-speaking people fail to pronounce distinctly the final "D" of a word, saying rather "ciudá" and "usté."

If it is desired to retain the "U" sound following "G" before "E" or "I," place the dieresis (two dots) over the "U."

**averigüe**—I ascertained
**vergüenza**—shame

**H** This letter is silent[2] in Spanish.

**humano**—human
**hermoso**—beautiful
**huelga**—strike (work)
**hueso**—bone
**hasta**—until
**húmedo**—humid
**huevo**—egg
**almohada**—pillow

**I** Like the "I" in the English word "machine."

**idea**—idea
**idioma**—language
**iglesia**—church
**lindo**—pretty
**comida**—dinner
**isla**—island

**J** This letter is strongly aspirated like the "H" in the English word "house."

**juez**—judge
**juro**—I swear
**junio**—June
**jueves**—Thursday
**jardín**—garden
**reloj**[3]—watch

**K** This letter is found only in foreign words and is pronounced in the same manner as it is in the foreign word.

**L** About as it is in English with the tongue nearly flat and the tip close to the front teeth.

**lago**—lake
**lana**—wool
**lápiz**—pencil
**leer**—to read
**lejos**—far
**lugar**—place

**LL** This is the second of the Spanish characters that differs from the English. It is considered as a single symbol and not as a double letter. It is found in the dictionary directly after the "L." On the Mexican Border this letter is pronounced like the English consonant "Y."

**ella**—she
**llave**—key
**llevar**—to carry
**llegar**—to arrive
**lluvia**—rain
**llegada**—arrival

---

[2] This letter is very slightly aspirated before the diphthong "UE"; however, in many instances the aspiration is so slight that it is almost imperceptible.

[3] Many Spanish-speaking persons pronounce this word "**reló**," and in some instances it will be found so written.

**M** As in English.

mapa—map
martes—Tuesday
marzo—March
más—more
mes—month
marido—husband

**N** As in English.

nada—nothing
nadie—nobody
nunca—never
nombre—name
noche—night
anoche—last night

**Ñ** This is the third of the Spanish characters that differs from the English, and it is found after the "N" in the dictionary. It has the same value of the "NY" of "canyon."

montaña—mountain
niño—child
leña—firewood
compañía—company
albañil—mason
mañana—tomorrow

**O** In open syllables like the "O" in "obey."

ocho—eight
oficina—office
ojo—eye
oro—gold
permiso—permission
recibo—receipt

In closed syllables like the "O" in "order."

son—they are
señor—sir
vapor—ship
con—with
sombrero—hat
por—by, through, for

**P** About as in English.

peso—peso
pagar—to pay
puerta—door
puerto—port
para—for, in order to
pelo—hair

**Q** This letter is always followed by "U" and in turn by either "E" or "I," and the "U" is always silent. The "QU" has the value of the English "K."

querer—to want, to wish
quince—fifteen
¿que?—What?
quien—who
quebrar—to break
quemar—to burn

**R** This letter is slightly trilled in Spanish. At the beginning of a word it is very strongly trilled.

pero—but
primero—first
parte—part
razón—reason
renta—rent
tener—to have

**RR** This is the last of the Spanish characters that differs from the English letters. It is found after the letter "R" in the dictionary. It is very strongly trilled.

perro—dog
perra—female dog
hierro—iron
carro—car
herrero—blacksmith
cigarro—cigarette

**S** About like the "S" in the English word "sister."

bastante—enough
buscar—to look for
casa—house
contestar—to answer
cosa—thing
bosque—forest

The "S" preceding "D" or "M" has a buzzing sound.

desde—since, from
mismo—same

**T** As in English.

tarde—late
tez—complexion
taza—cup
triste—sad
turista—tourist
también—also, too

**U** As a vowel like the "OO" of "moon."

último—last
un—one, a, an
usar—to use
único—only
luna—moon
sujeto—subject

For "U" as a consonant, see diphthongs.

**V** See "B."

voy—I am going
viaje—trip
invierno—winter
evidencia—evidence
jueves—Thursday
enviar—to send

**W** This letter appears only in foreign words and is pronounced as it is in the foreign word in which it appears.

**X** This letter has the value of the English "GS" between vowels.

exacto—exact
exactamente—exactly
examinar—to examine
examen—examination

It is pronounced like the English "S" before consonants. Some people pronounce the "X" before a consonant in Spanish as it is pronounced in English.

explicar—to explain
extranjero—alien, foreigner
extensión—extension
expreso—express

**Y** Standing alone it means "and" and is pronounced like the English long "E."

As a consonant it is pronounced like the "Y" in "Yuma."

**yo—I**
**ya—already**
**yerno—son-in-law**
**leyó—he read**

See diphthongs for its use in diphthongs.

**Z** Has the same value as "C" before "E" or "I."

**zapato—shoe**
**zapatero—shoemaker**
**zapatería—shoeshop**
**comenzar—to begin**
**empezar—to begin**
**vez—time (numerically)**

This letter rarely appears before "E" or "I" in Spanish. In conjugating verbs the "Z" is changed to "C" before "E." There are no conjugations where the letter "I" follows "Z."

## DIPHTHONGS

Diphthongs in Spanish are formed by the following combinations of vowels in one syllable: a weak plus a strong vowel, a strong plus a weak vowel, or two weak vowels. The strong vowels are "A," "E," and "O"; the weak ones are "I," "U," and "Y." Two strong vowels cannot appear in the same syllable. In order to retain the full value of a weak vowel when it appears in combination with a strong vowel, it is necessary to place the written accent over the weak vowel. This results in two syllables and breaks up the diphthong.

**AI or AY**—About like the "Y" in "rye."

**aire—air**
**hay—there is, there are**
**traigo—I bring**
**tráigame—bring me**

**EI or EY**—About like the "EY" in "they."

**rey—king**
**reina—queen**
**seis—six**
**veinte—twenty**

**OI or OY**—About like the "OY" in "boy."

**doy—I give**
**voy—I am going**
**oigo—I hear**
**soy—I am**
**hoy—today**
**estoy—I am**

**AU**—About like the "OW" in "cow."

**cautivo—captive**
**autor—author**
**aunque—although**
**causa—cause**

**EU**—An "E" plus "U" sound as in

Europa—Europe
reumatismo—rheumatism

In the following groups the "U" and "I" preceding other vowels are often considered as semiconsonants and have the value of "W" and "Y" respectively.

**UA**

¿cuánto?—how much?
¿cuándo?—when?
cuatro—four
cuarto—room, fourth

**UE**

puerta—door
puente—bridge
nuevo—new
cuerpo—body

**UO**

cuota—quota or share

**IA**

hacia—toward
estudia—he studies
farmacia—pharmacy
Alemania—Germany

**IE**

pierna—leg
diente—tooth
tiempo—time (length)
viejo—old

**IO**

adiós—goodbye
palacio—palace
precio—price
recibió—he received

**IU**

triunfo—triumph
ciudad—city
ciudadano—citizen
ciudadanía—citizenship

**UI**

cuidado—care
ruido—noise

In all of the foregoing diphthongs the stress of the voice falls on the strong vowel when the syllable is stressed. In the case of two weak vowels, the stress is on the second of the two when the syllable is stressed.

"UE" or "UI" following "Q" or "G" are not diphthongs, the "U" being silent.

## SYLLABICATION

In dividing words into syllables the following principles should be observed:

A consonant goes with the following vowel.

**a-mi-go e-ne-ro ma-ña-na**

Two strong vowels are separated.

**le-o ca-er lí-ne-a le-e**

Two consonants coming between vowels are usually separated.

**cin-co pron-to her-ma-no par-te**

The letters "CH," "LL," and "RR" are considered as one letter and are never separated.

**mu-cha-cho ca-lle ci-ga-rro pe-rro**

A consonant followed by "R" or "L" is not separated from the "R" or "L" except "RL," "SL," "TL," "SR," and "NR."

**ha-blar li-bro en-trar hom-bre**

but:

**is-la per-la at-las char-la**

The letters of a diphthong or triphthong are not separated.

**jui-cio puer-ta hue-ro**

If the weak vowel of a diphthong or triphthong is accented, or the first vowel when both are weak, the accent mark is placed over said vowel to show that there is no longer a diphthong or triphthong.

**dí-a le-í-do flú-i-do**

The last of more than two consonants coming between vowels goes with the following vowel.

**cons-tan-te pers-pec-ti-va ins-tan-te**

A prefix forms a separate syllable.

**ex-pre-sar con-se-guir**

## ACCENTUATION

Words ending in a vowel or "N" or "S" receive the stress of the voice regularly on the next to the last syllable. In the following list, the words are divided into syllables, and the syllables receiving the stress is underlined.

**ju lio**—July
**a mi go**—friend
**fe cha**—date
**u no**—one, a
**tra ba jo**—work
**di ne ro**—money

Words ending in a consonant other than "N" or "S" receive the stress of the voice regularly on the last syllable.

**ve nir**—to come
**mu jer**—woman
**pa pel**—paper
**ca lor**—heat
**co lor**—color
**de se ar**—to desire

Words stressed contrary to the two foregoing rules bear the written accent over the vowel of the syllable to be stressed.

**lec ción**—lesson
**fá cil**—easy
**di fí cil**—difficult
**ár bo les**—trees
**a quí**—here
**jó ve nes**—youths

Certain words bear the written accent in order to distinguish them from other words otherwise spelled alike and pronounced alike, but having an entirely different meaning.

**él**—he
**sí**—yes
**tú**—you
**el**—the
**si**—if
**tu**—your
**dé**—give
**mí**—me
**té**—tea
**de**—of, from
**mi**—my
**te**—you

The written accent is used to distinguish the interrogative or exclamatory from the relative use of pronouns and adverbs.

**¿cuánto?**—how much?
**cuanto**—how much
**¿cuándo?**—when?
**cuando**—when
**¿cómo?**—how?
**como**—like, as how
**¿quién?**—who?
**quien**—who

The written accent over the weak vowel of a weak plus strong or strong plus weak combination breaks up the diphthong and results in two separate syllables.

**creído—cre í do** **leído—le í do** **país—pa ís**

## PUNCTUATION

Punctuation is the same in Spanish as in English with the following exceptions:

A question has an inverted question mark (¿) at the beginning of the question as well as the regular question mark (?) at the end.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿(En) dónde está Juan? | Where is Juan? |
| ¿Cómo está Vd.? | How are you? |

An exclamation has the inverted exclamation mark (¡) at the beginning of the interjection as well as the regular exclamation mark (!) at the end.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¡Qué bonito! | How pretty! |
| ¡Qué lástima! | What a pity! |

In quotations a dash (—) is generally used to indicate a change of speaker instead of quotation marks.

Juan dijo:—Yo no voy. —Ni yo tampoco. —respondió Ana.
Juan said: "I am not going." "Nor I neither," responded Ana.

The days of the week and the months of the year are not capitalized unless at the beginning of a sentence.

| | |
|---|---|
| Hoy es lunes. | Today is Monday. |
| Es el dos de mayo. | It is the second of May. |

The pronoun "yo" (I) is not capitalized, except at the beginning of a sentence.

An adjective of nationality is not capitalized. Some authors capitalize adjectives of nationality used as nouns while others do not.

| | |
|---|---|
| Yo hablo español. | I speak Spanish. |
| Hablo con un francés.<br>Le hablo a un Francés. | I am speaking to a Frenchman. |

The following abbreviations are capitalized.

usted—Vd.
ustedes—Vds.
señor—Sr.
señora—Sra.
señorita—Srta.

## Lesson II

## PARTS OF SPEECH

There are eight parts of speech in Spanish as well as in English: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

### NOUNS

A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing. A proper noun is the name of a particular person, place, or thing.

John—**Juan**
Charles—**Carlos**
Henry—**Enrique**
Paul—**Pablo**
Mexico—**México**
Mary—**María**
Anna—**Ana**
Louise—**Luisa**
El Paso—**El Paso**
Texas—**Texas**

A common noun is a common name for persons, places, or things that are of the same class or kind.

boy—**muchacho**
year—**año**
week—**semana**
river—**río**
visa—**visa**
town—**pueblo**
book—**libro**
passport—**pasaporte**
month—**mes**
bridge—**puente**

In English there are three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. In Spanish all nouns are masculine or feminine, there being no neuter. Generally nouns ending in "O" are masculine, and nouns ending in "A" are feminine. Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings are feminine.

the boy—**el muchacho**
the girl—**la muchacha**
the state—**el estado**
the pen—**la pluma**
the gold—**el oro**
the brother—**el hermano**
the sister—**la hermana**
the money—**el dinero**
the silver—**la plata**
the table—**la mesa**

There are several exceptions to the above, such as:

the hand—**la mano**
the map—**el mapa**
the day—**el día**

Nouns not ending in "O" or "A" should be memorized with the definite article.

the paper—**el papel**
the month—**el mes**
the pencil—**el lápiz**
the foot—**el pie**

The following endings are generally feminine or masculine respectively:

Generally feminine: **ción, dad, tad, umbre, tud**
Generally masculine: **ón, el, al, ente, ador, or**

Nouns ending in a vowel form their plurals by adding "S," and those ending in a consonant form their plurals by adding "ES." Those ending in "Z" change the "Z" to "C" before adding "ES."

| | |
|---|---|
| **hijo**—son | **hijos**—sons |
| **mesa**—table | **mesas**—tables |
| **papel**—paper | **papeles**—papers |
| **doctor**—doctor | **doctores**—doctors |
| **luz**—light | **luces**—lights |
| **lápiz**—pencil | **lápices**—pencils |

The masculine plural of nouns and of adjectives used as nouns may include both male and female beings when they denote rank or relation: **"Los niños,"**—the children, the boy and the girl, the boys and the girls, or the boys. Should there be any ambiguity in meaning, the noun may be repeated: **"El niño y la niña."**

**los abuelos**—the grandparents
**los padres**—the parents

**los alumnos**—the students
**los viejos**—the old (people)
**los jóvenes**—the young (people)
**los niños**—the children
**los hermanos**—the brothers & sisters
**los tíos**—the uncle & aunt
**los pobres**—the poor (people)
**los ricos**—the rich (people)

## PRONOUNS

A pronoun is a word that takes the place of, or is used instead of a noun. Listed below are the English and Spanish subject pronouns with the persons and numbers:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1st person singular—I **(yo)** | 1st person plural—we **(nosotros)** |
| 2nd person singular—you **(tú)** | 2nd person plural[1]—**vosotros** |
| 3rd person singular—he **(él)** | 3rd person plural—they **(ellos)** |
| 3rd person singular—she **(ella)** | 3rd person plural—they **(ellas)** |
| 3rd person singular—you **(Vd.)** | 3rd person plural—you **(Vds.)** |

In Spanish there are two ways of saying "you" in the singular. **"Tú"** is called the familiar form and is used in speaking to members of one's family, intimate friends, servants, and animals. This form is used with the second person form of the verb. **"Usted"** and its plural **"Ustedes"** are called the formal or polite form. **"Vd."** and **"Vds."** are the abbreviations for **"Usted"** and **"Ustedes."** In writing they may be written in the abbreviated form or written completely. This form is derived from "vuestra merced" and "vuestras mercedes" meaning "your grace." This form is used only with the third person of the verb. The plural form of "you" is always **"Vds."**

---

[1] Since the 2nd person plural is seldom, if ever, used in the average conversation, it will be omitted throughout this book, except in the appendix.

## ADJECTIVES

An adjective is a word that modifies (limits or describes) a noun or a pronoun.

**alto**—tall
**nuevo**—new
**pocos**—few
**viejo**—old
**azul**—blue
**mucho**—much

Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun that they modify.

Adjectives form their plurals in the same manner as nouns. If they end in a vowel, form plurals by adding "S"; if they end in a consonant form plurals by adding "ES"; if they end in "Z" change the "Z" to "C" and add "ES."

Adjectives ending in "O" in the masculine change the "O" to "A" to form the feminine. Other adjectives are the same for both genders. Exception: Adjectives of nationality ending in a consonant in the masculine singular add "A" to form the feminine.

| *Masculine* | | | *Feminine* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular* | *Plural* | | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| **blanco** | **blancos** | (white) | **blanca** | **blancas** |
| **alto** | **altos** | (tall) | **alta** | **altas** |
| **grande** | **grandes** | (large) | **grande** | **grandes** |
| **español** | **españoles** | (Spanish) | **española** | **españolas** |
| **inglés** | **ingleses** | (English) | **inglesa** | **inglesas** |
| **mexicano** | **mexicanos** | (Mexican) | **mexicana** | **mexicanas** |

Limiting adjectives precede the noun they modify; descriptive adjectives generally follow the noun they modify.

| | |
|---|---|
| many books | **muchos libros** |
| many red books | **muchos libros rojos** |
| our house | **nuestra casa** |
| our large house | **nuestra casa grande** |
| ten horses | **diez caballos** |
| ten black horses | **diez caballos negros** |

## ARTICLES

The articles in Spanish are adjectives and, as such, precede the noun they modify and agree with it in number and gender. The singular is as follows:

| | *Masculine* | *Feminine* |
|---|---|---|
| Definite | **el**—the | **la**—the |
| Indefinite | **un**—a, an | **una**—a, an |

In the plural, the definite article has the following forms, agreeing with the nouns which they accompany (there are no plural indefinite articles):

| *Masculine* | *Feminine* |
|---|---|
| los—the | las—the |

Note: "Unos" and "unas" meaning "some" are not considered to be indefinite articles.

Masculine nouns require a masculine article; feminine nouns require a feminine article:

| | |
|---|---|
| **el hombre**—the man | **la muchacha**—the girl |
| **los hombres**—the men | **las muchachas**—the girls |
| **un pasaporte**—a passport | **una mesa**—a table |

**Exception:** Feminine nouns beginning with stressed "a" or "ha" take "el" in the singular instead of "la," when the article immediately precedes. "El" here is of different origin from the masculine article of the same form and its use does not by any means change the gender of the noun, thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| **el agua**—the water | **el hacha**—the axe |
| **el acta de nacimiento** | the birth certificate |

but:

| | |
|---|---|
| **las aguas**—the waters | **las hachas**—the axes |
| **las actas de nacimiento** | the birth certificates |

The definite article in Spanish generally has the same uses as the English. The leading difference being that Spanish employs the article before any noun used in a general sense or when nouns represent abstractions:

| | |
|---|---|
| **El hombre es mortal.** | Man is mortal. |
| **El tiempo es precioso.** | Time is precious. |

## VERBS

A verb is a word that shows action, being, or state of being.

| | |
|---|---|
| John writes a letter. | "action" |
| John is a boy. | "being" |
| John is sick. | "state of being" |

## ADVERBS

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. It answers: where (place), how (manner), and when (time).

**cerca**—near
**lejos**—far
**temprano**—early
**aquí**—here
**allí**—there
**tarde**—late
**bien**—well
**muy**—very
**nunca**—never
**más**—more
**así**—thus
**entonces**—then

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Él habla bien. | He speaks well. | (Modifies a verb) |
| Ella es muy bonita. | She is very pretty. | (Modifies an adj.) |
| Ellos hablan muy bien. | They speak very well. | (Modifies an adverb) |

Adverbs are often formed by adding **"mente"** to the feminine singular form of the adjective.

| *Adjective* | *Adverb* |
|---|---|
| **lenta** (slow) | **lentamente** (slowly) |
| **rápida** (rapid) | **rápidamente** (rapidly) |
| **feliz** (happy) | **felizmente** (happily) |
| **triste** (sad) | **tristemente** (sadly) |

Many times an adverbial phrase is used instead of the adverb.

| *Adverb* | *Adverbial phrase* | *Translation* |
|---|---|---|
| **finalmente** | **al fin, por fin** | finally, at last |
| **ciertamente** | **por cierto** | certainly |
| **claramente** | **con claridad** | clearly |
| **fácilmente** | **con facilidad** | easily |

When two or more adverbs occur in a series, only the last receives the termination **"mente"**; the other(s) assuming the form they would have if **"mente"** were to be added:

| | |
|---|---|
| **El habla lenta y claramente.** | He speaks slowly and clearly. |

## PREPOSITIONS

A preposition is a word that shows the relation of a noun or pronoun following it to some other word in the sentence.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **de**—from, of | **sobre**—on, over | **sin**—without |
| **en**—on, in, at (location) | **por**—by, through, for | **con**—with |
| **a**—at (time), to | **desde**—since, from | **para**—for, in order to |

The prepositional pronouns are the same as the subject pronouns with the exception of the first and second persons singular.

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **mí**—me | **nosotros(as)**—us |
| **ti**—you | |
| **él**—him | **ellos**—them |
| **ella**—her | **ellas**—them |
| **Vd.**—you | **Vds.**—you |

When used after the preposition **"con,"** the first and second persons singular become **"conmigo"** (with me) and **"contigo"** (with you) respectively.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Este libro es para Vd.** | This book is for you. |
| **Ella no estudia conmigo.** | She does not study with me. |
| **María no está con él.** | Maria is not with him. |
| **¿Va Juan contigo?** | Is Juan going with you? |

In Spanish, the masculine singular definite article **"el"** contracts with the prepositions **"a"** and **"de"** respectively.

"a" plus "el" equals "al"—to the
"de" plus "el" equals "del"—from the, of the

This contraction does not occur with the feminine definite articles **"la"** or **"las"** nor with the masculine plural definite article **"los."** The word **"él"** meaning "he" does not contract with the above prepositions.

Certain Spanish nouns call for a definite article not normally used in English when they are governed by the prepositions **"a," "de,"** or **"en"** respectively:

| | |
|---|---|
| **al pueblo, a la iglesia** | to town, to church |
| **a la escuela, a la clase** | to school, to class |
| **a la cárcel, al trabajo** | to jail, to work |
| **del pueblo, de la iglesia** | from town, from church |
| **de la escuela, de la clase** | from school, from class |
| **de la cárcel, del trabajo** | from jail, from work |
| **en el pueblo, en la iglesia** | in town, in (at) church |
| **en la escuela, en la clase** | in (at) school, in class |
| **en la cárcel, en el trabajo** | in jail, at work |

The word **"casa"** generally meaning "house," unaccompanied by any article, and preceded by a preposition, has the meaning of "home."

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **en casa**—at home | | **en la casa**—at the house |
| **de casa**—from home | BUT: | **de la casa**—from the house |
| **a casa**—home (to home) | | **a la casa**—to the house |

## USE OF PREPOSITION "OF" TO REPLACE ADJECTIVAL NOUNS

In Spanish a noun is never used as an adjective to show the material of which a thing is made as in English. Instead, the object and material of which it is constructed are joined by the preposition **"de."**

| *English* | *Spanish word order* | *Spanish translation* |
|---|---|---|
| the straw hat | the hat of straw | **el sombrero de paja** |
| the silk shirt | the shirt of silk | **la camisa de seda** |
| the wool suit | the suit of wool | **el traje de lana** |

## CONJUNCTIONS

A conjunction is a word that is used to join a word or group of words to a word or to a group of words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **y**—and | **porque**—because | **pero**—but |
| **si**—if | **aunque**—although | **o**—or |

| | |
|---|---|
| **El lápiz y la pluma están aquí.** | The pencil and pen are here. |
| **Tengo cinco o seis pesos.** | I have five or six pesos. |

## INTERJECTIONS

An interjection is a word that expresses strong or sudden feeling.

**¡Qué lástima!**—What a pity! **¡Qué bonito!**—How pretty!

## LESSON III

## THE SPANISH SENTENCE

A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought. It has two parts; the subject (noun or pronoun) and its modifiers, and the predicate (verb) and its modifiers.

The subject is that part about which something is said, and the predicate tells that which is said about the subject. The subject is broken up into the subject word and its modifiers, and the predicate is broken up into the predicate word and its modifiers.

The black horse/runs a beautiful race. "The black horse" is the complete subject, "horse" being the subject word modified by the adjectives "the" and "black." "Runs a beautiful race" is the complete predicate, "runs" being the predicate word modified by the phrase "a beautiful race."

Generally, the word order of Spanish sentences is the same as that in English sentences, i.e., subject, verb, object. However, in a question, Spanish usually places the subject after the verb. The auxiliary verb "do" is not translated from English to Spanish.

### WORD ORDER

| *English sentence* | *Spanish word order* | *Spanish translation* |
|---|---|---|
| Do you speak Spanish? | Speak you Spanish? | **¿Habla Vd. español?** |
| Do you eat here? | Eat you here? | **¿Come Vd. aquí?** |
| Do you work today? | Work you today? | **¿Trabaja Vd. hoy?** |

The same is true of the auxiliary (helping) verb "to be" except when used to form the passive voice or the progressive tenses.

| *English sentence* | *Spanish word order* | *Spanish translation* |
|---|---|---|
| Are you going to town? | Go you to town? | **¿Va Vd. al pueblo?** |
| Is he working here? | Works he here? | **¿Trabaja él aquí?** |

If an interrogative word is used in the question, generally the interrogative word is placed in the same position as in the English sentence.

| | |
|---|---|
| Why do you speak Spanish? | **¿Por qué habla Vd. español?** |
| When are you going to town? | **¿Cuándo va Vd. al pueblo?** |

### NEGATIVE SENTENCES

Negative sentences in Spanish are formed by placing the negative word immediately before the verb.

The expression "**¿no es verdad?**" (frequently shortened to "**¿verdad?**" or merely to "**¿no?**") is used inquiringly with an expectation of assent, where in English we repeat the auxiliary verb; thus:

**Ustedes cruzan todos los días, ¿no es verdad?**
You cross every day, don't you?

**Ellos estudian en la Academia, ¿no?**
They are studying at the Academy, aren't they?

"No" is associated with other negative words which come after it, and do not as in English, counteract the negation, but rather strengthen it:

| | |
|---|---|
| **No compro ninguna casa.** | I am not buying any house. |
| **No como nada.** | I do not eat anything. |

If any negative word is used with "no" it must be placed after the verb, otherwise it must take the place of "no," immediately before the verb:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él no come nunca aquí.** | He never eats here. |
| **Él nunca come aquí.** | He never eats here. |

### THE PERSONAL "A"

Another important difference between the English and the Spanish sentence construction is the Spanish usage of the personal "a" to introduce a direct object noun referring to a definite person or persons.

| | |
|---|---|
| **María lleva a los niños a la escuela.** | Maria is taking (is carrying) the children to school. |

Since the direct object noun "the children" is referring to definite persons, it is necessary to introduce it by the preposition **"a."** If **"niños"** (or any other direct object noun) is not referring to a definite person or persons but rather to children in general, the construction would be:

| | |
|---|---|
| **María lleva niños a la escuela.** | Maria takes children to school. |

If the direct object noun is not referring to persons at all, then there is no "a" used:

| | |
|---|---|
| **María lleva muchos libros.** | Maria is taking (is carrying) a lot of books. |

## LESSON IV

## POSSESSION OF NOUNS

The possession of nouns corresponding to the English " 's" or "s' " (apostrophe s, or s apostrophe) is expressed in Spanish by the use of the preposition **"de"** placed before the possessor.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The girl's book. | The book of the girl. | **El libro de la muchacha.** |
| Mary's pencils. | The pencils of Mary. | **Los lápices de Mary.** |
| The boys' home. | The home of the boys. | **La casa de los muchachos.** |

### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **mi**—my | **mis**—my |
| **tu**—your[1] | **tus**—your |
| **su**—his | **sus**—his |
| **su**—her | **sus**—her |
| **su**—your[1] | **sus**—your |
| **nuestro(a)**—our | **nuestros(as)**—our |
| **su**—their | **sus**—their |
| **su**—their | **sus**—their |
| **su**—your[1] | **sus**—your |

In Spanish the possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the thing possessed and not with the possessor.

| | |
|---|---|
| **mi sombrero**—my hat | **mis sombreros**—my hats |
| **mi pluma**—my pen | **mis plumas**—my pens |
| **nuestra casa**—our house | **nuestras casas**—our houses |
| **nuestro tío**—our uncle | **nuestros tíos**—our uncles |
| **su primo**—your cousin | **sus primos**—your cousins |
| **su prima**—your cousin | **sus primas**—your cousins |

The possessive adjectives precede the noun and are repeated before each noun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Carlos tiene mi libro y mi pluma.** | Carlos has my book and pen. |
| **Nuestra pluma y nuestro lápiz están en la mesa.** | Our pen and pencil are on the table. |

Since **"su"** and **"sus"** can have so many meanings, in order to prevent ambiguity, it is often necessary to use the preposition **"de"** and the proper prepositional pronoun after the object possessed. When the prepositional pronoun is used for clearness, the definite article is generally substituted for the possessive adjective. Either form is correct, but the use of the definite article is preferable:

---

[1] The possessive adjectives corresponding to the English possessive pronoun "your" are expressed in three ways as listed above. **"Tu"** is the familiar form and **"su"** is the polite form.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Su casa.** | Your house. |
| **La casa de Vd.** | Your house. |
| **Sus libros.** | His books. |
| **Los libros de él.** | His books. |
| **Su tía.** | Their aunt. |
| **La tía de ellos.** | Their aunt. |
| **Sus tías.** | His aunts. |
| **Las tías de él.** | His aunts. |

In the first two sentences below, the possessor has already been given in the sentence and no ambiguity exists. In the third sentence, "John" has the book of **"ella,"** another person; therefore, it is necessary to explain the sentence further with the prepositional phrase **"de ella."**

| | |
|---|---|
| **John tiene su libro.** | John has his book. |
| **Ella tiene su pluma.** | She has her pen. |
| **John tiene el libro de ella.** | John has her book. |

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

| *Singular* | *Plural* | *Singular* | *Plural* | *English* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **el mío** | **los míos** | **la mía** | **las mías** | mine |
| **el tuyo** | **los tuyos** | **la tuya** | **las tuyas** | yours |
| **el suyo** | **los suyos** | **la suya** | **las suyas** | his |
| **el suyo** | **los suyos** | **la suya** | **las suyas** | hers |
| **el suyo** | **los suyos** | **la suya** | **las suyas** | yours |
| **el nuestro** | **los nuestros** | **la nuestra** | **las nuestras** | ours |
| **el suyo** | **los suyos** | **la suya** | **las suyas** | theirs |
| **el suyo** | **los suyos** | **la suya** | **las suyas** | theirs |
| **el suyo** | **los suyos** | **la suya** | **las suyas** | yours |

A possessive pronoun agrees with the noun for which it stands in gender and number.

In the following sentences the word **"libro"** has been replaced by the possessive pronoun. **"Libro"** is masculine singular; therefore, the masculine singular possessive pronoun has replaced it.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿En dónde está su libro?** | Where is your book? |
| **El mío está aquí.** | Mine is here. |
| **El suyo (El de él) es verde.** | His is green. |
| **El nuestro es grande.** | Ours is large. |

In the following sentences the word **"pluma"** is feminine singular and is replaced by the feminine singular possessive pronoun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Esta pluma es verde.** | This pen is green. |
| **La mía no es blanca.** | Mine is not white. |
| **La suya (La de él) es negra.** | His is black. |
| **La nuestra es grande.** | Ours is large. |

In the following sentences the word **"libros"** is masculine plural and is replaced by the masculine plural possessive pronoun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿En dónde están sus libros?** | Where are your books? |
| **Los míos están aquí.** | Mine are here. |
| **Los suyos (Los de él) son rojos.** | His are red. |
| **Los nuestros son azules.** | Ours are blue. |

In the following sentences the word **"plumas"** is feminine plural and is replaced by the feminine plural possessive pronoun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Estas plumas son verdes.** | These pens are green. |
| **Las mías son blancas.** | Mine are white. |
| **Las suyas (Las de él) son negras.** | His are black. |
| **Las nuestras son grandes.** | Ours are large. |

In order to prevent ambiguity, instead of **"el suyo"** use **"el de él," "el de ella," "el de Vd.,"** etc. Instead of **"la suya"** use **"la de él," "la de ella," "la de Vd.,"** etc. Instead of **"los suyos"** use **"los de él," "los de ella," "los de Vd.,"** etc. Instead of **"las suyas"** use **"las de él," "las de ella," "las de Vd.,"** etc.

**Tengo el suyo.** =
- **Tengo el de él.**—I have his.
- **Tengo el de ella.**—I have hers.
- **Tengo el de Vd.**—I have yours.
- **Tengo el de ellos.**—I have theirs.
- **Tengo el de ellas.**—I have theirs.
- **Tengo el de Vds.**—I have yours.

In order to prevent the repetition of the noun, the following construction may be used:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mi pluma y la pluma de Juan.** | My pen and Juan's pen. |
| **Mi pluma y la de Juan.** | My pen and Juan's. |
| **Su lápiz y el lápiz de María.** | Your pencil and Maria's pencil. |
| **Su lápiz y el de María.** | Your pencil and Maria's. |

Immediately following the verb "ser" the definite article may be omitted. However, it may be used for emphasis.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Este libro es el suyo.** | This book is yours. (emphasis) |
| **Este libro es suyo.** | This book is yours. |
| **Esta pluma es la suya.** | This pen is his. (emphasis) |
| **Esta pluma es suya.** | This pen is his. |
| **La pluma es la de él.** | The pen is his. (emphasis) |
| **La pluma es de él.** | The pen is his. |
| **La pluma es la de Juan.** | The pen is Juan's. (emphasis) |
| **La pluma es de Juan.** | The pen is Juan's. |

The possessive pronoun is sometimes used after a noun and is usually translated "of mine," "of his," etc., or "my" is used in an exclamation.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Un amigo mío vive aquí.** | A friend of mine lives here. |
| **¡Hijo mío! ¡Qué alto es Vd.!** | My son! How tall you are! |

### DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

| | *Singular* | | | | *Plural* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Masculine* | *English* | *Feminine* | | *Masculine* | *English* | *Feminine* |
| **este** | this | **esta** | near speaker | **estos** | these | **estas** |
| **ese** | that | **esa** | near spoken to | **esos** | those | **esas** |
| **aquel** | that | **aquella** | at a distance | **aquellos** | those | **aquellas** |

The demonstrative adjective precedes the noun that it modifies and agrees with it in number and gender.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **esta pluma** | this pen | **estas plumas** | these pens |
| **este libro** | this book | **estos libros** | these books |
| **esa carta** | that letter | **esas cartas** | those letters |
| **ese libro** | that book | **esos libros** | those books |
| **aquella pluma** | that pen | **aquellas plumas** | those pens |
| **aquel libro** | that book | **aquellos libros** | those books |

When the demonstratives stand alone, they take the place of the object pointed out and bear the written accent mark over the vowel of the proper syllable. When they stand alone they are demonstrative pronouns. The pronouns agree in number and gender with the nouns whose place they take.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Éste es mi libro.** | This is my book. |
| **Ése es (el) mío.** | That is mine. |
| **Éstas son de mi padre.** | These are my father's. |
| **¿De quién es éste?** | Whose is this? |

The neuter pronouns "**esto**," "**eso**," and "**aquello**" have no written accent mark and are used when the thing for which they stand is a statement, idea, or something indefinite or unknown.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Qué es esto?** | What is this? |
| **Eso no es verdad.** | That is not true. |
| **¡Eso es!** | That's it! |
| **No quiero pensar en aquello.** | I don't want to think of that. |

## Lesson V

## PRESENT INDICATIVE TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS

In Spanish, verbs are conjugated to show mood, tense, person, and number. Most verbs are conjugated after a regular pattern. Verbs that do not follow the pattern are said to be irregular and must be committed to memory. Even these irregular verbs are not irregular in all tenses.

The present indicative tense in Spanish means that the time spoken of is present and indicates or points out a thing as material or existing. It may be used to make a statement or to ask a question, either affirmatively or negatively.

1st conjugation—**habl-AR**—to speak
2nd conjugation—**vend-ER**—to sell
3rd conjugation—**viv-IR**—to live

The infinitive is the key word that is used to form all conjugations and tenses. The present indicative tense is formed by dropping the infinitive endings "AR," "ER," and "IR," and to the remainder, which is the stem, attaching the proper endings. From the infinitive of all regular "AR" verbs, of which **"hablar"** is an example, the "AR" ending is dropped, and to the remainder **"habl,"** which is the stem, are attached the following endings: o, as, a, amos, an.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **hablo** | 1st person singular | The person speaking | I |
| **tú** | **hablas** | 2nd person singular | The person spoken to | you |
| **él** | **habla** | 3rd person singular | The person spoken of | he |
| **ella** | **habla** | 3rd person singular | The person spoken of | she |
| **Vd.** | **habla** | 3rd person singular | The person spoken to | you |
| **nosotros(as)** | **hablamos** | 1st person plural | The persons speaking | we |
| **ellos** | **hablan** | 3rd person plural | The persons spoken of | they |
| **ellas** | **hablan** | 3rd person plural | The persons spoken of | they |
| **Vds.** | **hablan** | 3rd person plural | The persons spoken to | you |

From the infinitive of all regular "ER" verbs, of which **"vender"** is an example, the "ER" ending is dropped and to the remainder, **"vend,"** which is the stem, are attached the following endings: o, s, e, emos, en.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **vendo** | **nosotros(as)** | **vendemos** |
| **tú** | **vendes** | | |
| **él** | **vende** | **ellos** | **venden** |
| **ella** | **vende** | **ellas** | **venden** |
| **Vd.** | **vende** | **Vds.** | **venden** |

From the infinitive of all regular "IR" verbs, of which "vivir" is an example, the "IR" ending is dropped and to the remainder, "viv," which is the stem, are attached the following endings: o, es, e, imos, en.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **vivo** | **nosotros(as)** | **vivimos** |
| **tú** | **vives** | | |
| **él** | **vive** | **ellos** | **viven** |
| **ella** | **vive** | **ellas** | **viven** |
| **Vd.** | **vive** | **Vds.** | **viven** |

The present indicative of these verbs translates in the following ways in English:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo hablo.** | I speak. I do speak. I am speaking. |
| **¿Hablo yo?** | Do I speak? Am I speaking? |
| **Yo no hablo.** | I do not speak. I am not speaking. |
| **¿No hablo yo?** | Do I not speak? Am I not speaking? |
| **Tú hablas.** | You speak. You do speak. You are speaking. |
| **¿Hablas tú?** | Do you speak? Are you speaking? |
| **Tú no hablas.** | You do not speak. You are not speaking. |
| **¿No hablas tú?** | Do you not speak? Are you not speaking? |
| **Él habla.** | He speaks. He does speak. He is speaking. |
| **¿Habla él?** | Does he speak? Is he speaking? |
| **Él no habla.** | He does not speak. He is not speaking. |
| **¿No habla él?** | Does he not speak? Is he not speaking? |
| **Ella habla.** | She speaks. She does speak. She is speaking. |
| **¿Habla ella?** | Does she speak? Is she speaking? |
| **Ella no habla.** | She does not speak. She is not speaking. |
| **¿No habla ella?** | Does she not speak? Is she not speaking? |
| **Vd. habla.** | You speak. You do speak. You are speaking. |
| **¿Habla Vd.?** | Do you speak? Are you speaking? |
| **Vd. no habla.** | You do not speak. You are not speaking. |
| **¿No habla Vd.?** | Do you not speak? Are you not speaking? |

The plural forms are used in the same manner as above. Notice that the negative "**no**" immediately precedes the verbs.

Following are a few regular verbs that are conjugated in the present indicative tense by following the key given in this lesson.

### 1st Conjugation (AR)

**acabar**—to finish
**aconsejar**—to advise
**arrestar**—to arrest
**ayudar**—to help
**comprar**—to buy
**contestar**—to answer
**cortar**—to cut
**deportar**—to deport
**desear**—to wish, to desire
**dudar**—to doubt
**entrar**—to enter
**esperar**—to wait for
**estudiar**—to study
**ganar**—to earn, to win
**gastar**—to spend
**llamar**—to call
**llegar**—to arrive
**llevar**—to carry, to take
**olvidar**—to forget
**pagar**—to pay
**pasar**—to pass
**pesar**—to weigh
**sacar**—to take out
**solicitar**—to solicit
**terminar**—to finish
**tomar**—to drink, to take
**trabajar**—to work
**usar**—to use

### 2nd Conjugation (ER)

**aprender**—to learn
**beber**—to drink
**comer**—to eat
**deber**—to owe
**vender**—to sell

### 3rd Conjugation (IR)

**abrir**—to open
**escribir**—to write
**recibir**—to receive
**residir**—to reside
**vivir**—to live

### "TOMAR" AND "LLEVAR"

The verbs **"tomar"** and **"llevar"** both meaning "to take" are never used interchangeably. Both are regular verbs.

#### Uses of **"Tomar"**

To take a public conveyance:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tomo el autobús hoy.** | I am taking the bus today. |
| **Sergio toma el avión.** | Sergio is taking the airplane. |
| **Tomamos un taxi al pueblo.** | We are taking a taxi to town. |

To eat or drink something:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Susana toma café.** | Susana drinks coffee. |
| **Antonio toma un refresco.** | Antonio is drinking a soft drink. |
| **Ese hombre toma mucho.** | That man drinks a lot. |
| **Tomamos la medicina a las ocho.** | We take the medicine at eight. |

To grasp or take hold of:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él toma el lápiz de la mesa.** | He takes the pencile from the table. |

To take a seat:

| | |
|---|---|
| **La señora toma un asiento.** | The lady takes a seat. |

## Uses of "Llevar"

To transport a person or thing from one location to another:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ellos llevan el algodón a la otra labor.** | They are taking the cotton to the other field. |
| **Llevamos a los extranjeros al corralón.** | We take the aliens to the detention camp. |

To carry or to take with oneself:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él lleva su pasaporte en su cartera.** | He carries his passport in his billfold. |
| **Llevamos mucho dinero.** | We are carrying a lot of money. |

To wear:

| | |
|---|---|
| **El hombre lleva una camisa negra.** | Te man is wearing a black shirt. |

### VOCABULARY

**el muchacho**—the boy
**la señora**—the lady, the woman
**la madre**—the mother
**el doctor**—the doctor
**la enfermera**—the nurse
**el abogado**—the lawyer
**el autobús**—the bus
**el taxi**—the taxi
**el carro**—the car
**el tren**—the train
**la lección**—the lesson
**el pasaporte**—the passport
**la visa**—the visa
**la tarjeta**—the card
**la pistola**—the pistol
**el lápiz**—the pencil
**el dinero**—the money
**el agua**—the water
**México**—Mexico
**el español**—Spanish
**la ciudad**—the city
**el día**—the day
**el mes**—the month
**el año**—the year
**dos**—two
**falso**—false
**cada**—each, every
**mucho**—a lot of, much, a great deal of
**azul**—blue
**bastante**—enough
**hoy**—today
**mañana**—tomorrow
**siempre**—always
**temprano**—early
**nunca**—never, not ever
**ilegalmente**—illegally
**de día**—by day, in the daytime

## EXERCISE

1. The boy buys a pencil.
2. Does she live in El Paso?
3. We study a lot.
4. Do we write the lessons every day?
5. Is he working today?
6. Is he taking the bus tomorrow?
7. Alberto is taking the book to his room.
8. I always take a taxi.
9. Do you sell these passports?
10. He and Pepe earn enough money.
11. Luis and María do not earn a lot of money.
12. We do not speak Spanish.
13. He is taking out his visa today.
14. Do you (pl) take out a passport every year?
15. Simon arrives early every day.
16. We never cross illegally.
17. Do you drive your boss's car?
18. They are waiting for the train.
19. He does not drink much water.
20. They (f) work a great deal.
21. Does this lady owe a lot of money?
22. Are they selling these false cards in Mexico?
23. The boy's mother passes through (por) this city every month.
24. That doctor's nurse lives in that blue house.
25. Are those lawyers buying these two cars?

## Lesson VI

## PRESENT INDICATIVE TENSE OF IRREGULAR VERBS

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Caber—to contain, to fit** | **quepo** | **cabes** | **cabe** | **cabemos** | **caben** |
| **Caer—to fall** | **caigo** | **caes** | **cae** | **caemos** | **caen** |
| **Dar—to give** | **doy** | **das** | **da** | **damos** | **dan** |
| **Decir—to say, to tell** | **digo** | **dices** | **dice** | **decimos** | **dicen** |
| **Estar—to be** | **estoy** | **estás** | **está** | **estamos** | **están** |
| **Haber—to have (auxiliary)** | **he** | **has** | **ha** | **hemos** | **han** |
| **Hacer—to do, to make** | **hago** | **haces** | **hace** | **hacemos** | **hacen** |
| **Ir—to go** | **voy** | **vas** | **va** | **vamos** | **van** |
| **Oír—to hear** | **oigo** | **oyes** | **oye** | **oímos** | **oyen** |
| **Poner—to put, to place** | **pongo** | **pones** | **pone** | **ponemos** | **ponen** |
| **Saber—to know** | **sé** | **sabes** | **sabe** | **sabemos** | **saben** |
| **Salir—to leave, to depart** | **salgo** | **sales** | **sale** | **salimos** | **salen** |
| **Ser—to be** | **soy** | **eres** | **es** | **somos** | **son** |
| **Tener—to have (possession)** | **tengo** | **tienes** | **tiene** | **tenemos** | **tienen** |
| **Traer—to bring** | **traigo** | **traes** | **trae** | **traemos** | **traen** |
| **Valer—to be worth** | **valgo** | **vales** | **vale** | **valemos** | **valen** |
| **Venir—to come** | **vengo** | **vienes** | **viene** | **venimos** | **vienen** |
| **Ver—to see** | **veo** | **ves** | **ve** | **vemos** | **ven** |

### "SABER" AND "CONOCER"

Although **"saber"** and **"conocer"** both mean "to know," they are not interchangeable. **"Saber"** means to know through having learned mentally, while **"conocer"** means to be acquainted with.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo sé la lección.** | I know the lesson. |
| **¿Sabe Vd. leer español?** | Do you know how to read Spanish? |
| **Yo conozco al contrabandista.** | I know the smuggler. |
| **Él conoce a mi papá.** | He knows my father. |
| **¿Conoce Vd. a México?**[1] | Do you know Mexico? |

---

[1] The personal "a" may be used with geographical names.

### "TENER" AND "TRAER"

The verb **"tener"** means "to have" showing possession while **"traer"** meaning "to bring" has a special meaning when it is used in place of the English verb "to have." When **"traer"** is used for "to have," it implies "on the person" or "in his belonging or belongings."

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Tiene Vd. un pasaporte?** | Dou you have a passport? |
| **¿Trae Vd. un pasaporte?** | Do you have a passport? (on you) |
| **Yo traigo mis papeles en mi maleta.** | I have my papers in my suitcase. |
| **Ella tiene tres hermanos.** | She has three brothers. |

### RADICAL CHANGING VERBS

There are three classes of radical changing verbs. The root vowel (the vowel of the syllable coming immediately before the infinitive ending) makes certain changes.

### FIRST CLASSIFICATION

Radical changing verbs of the first classification include verbs of the first (ar) conjugation and the second (er) conjugation. The root vowel "o" changes to "ue" and the root vowel "e" to "ie" when the stress falls on that syllable. This change takes place in four places: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons singular, and 3rd person plural of the present indicative tense.

*First Conjugation*

| **Pensar** | | **Recordar** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **pienso** | **pensamos** | **recuerdo** | **recordamos** |
| **piensas** | | **recuerdas** | |
| **piensa** | **piensan** | **recuerda** | **recuerdan** |

**Other first conjugation verbs:**

**cerrar**—to close
**comenzar**—to begin
**confesar**—to confess
**contar**—to count, to relate
**costar**—to cost
**despertar**—to awaken
**encerrar**—to enclose, to lock up
**encontrar**—to meet, encounter
**empezar**—to begin
**pensar**—to think
**mostrar**—to show
**negar**—to deny
**probar**—to prove
**regar**—to irrigate

*Second Conjugation*

| **Entender** | | **Poder** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **entiendo** | **entendemos** | **puedo** | **podemos** |
| **entiendes** | | **puedes** | |
| **entiende** | **entienden** | **puede** | **pueden** |

Other second conjugation verbs:

**devolver**—to give back
**llover**—to rain
**perder**—to lose
**querer**—to want
**volver**—to return

### SECOND CLASSIFICATION

Radical changing verbs of the second classication have verbs of the third (ir) conjugation. The root vowel "o" changes to "ue" and the root vowel "e" changes to "ie" in the same places as do radical changing verbs of the first classification.

*Third Conjugation*

| **Mentir** | | **Dormir** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **miento** | **mentimos** | **duermo** | **dormimos** |
| **mientes** | | **duermes** | |
| **miente** | **mienten** | **duerme** | **duermen** |

Other third conjugation verbs:

**consentir**—to consent
**morir**—to die
**preferir**—to prefer
**referir**—to refer
**sentir**—to feel

### THIRD CLASSIFICATION

Radical changing verbs of the third classification have only verbs of the third (ir) conjugation, and in the root or stem, the vowel is "e." This classification differs from the second classification in that the root vowel "e" changes to "i" when the stress is on the stem of the verb.

*Third Conjugation*

| **Pedir** | | **Conseguir** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **pido** | **pedimos** | **consigo** | **conseguimos** |
| **pides** | | **consigues** | |
| **pide** | **piden** | **consigue** | **consiguen** |

Other third conjugation verbs:

**medir**—to measure
**repetir**—to repeat
**seguir**—to follow, continue

### INTERROGATIVE WORDS

**"¿Cuál (es)?"** meaning "which?" refers to persons or things, and is used to select or choose one or more than one from a larger group.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuál de los libros es (el) suyo?** | Which (one) of the books is yours? |
| **¿Cuáles de los libros son (los) suyos?** | Which (ones) of the books are yours? |
| **¿Cuál es su hermano?** | Which (one) is your brother? |
| **¿Cuáles son sus hermanos?** | Which (ones) are your brothers? |

**"¿Cuál?"** meaning "what?" is used before **"ser,"** except when a definition is asked for, in which case **"¿qué?"** is used.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuál es la fecha (de hoy)?** | What is the date? |
| **¿Cuál es su ocupación?** | What is your occupation? |
| **¿Cuál es su nacionalidad?** | What is your nationality? |
| **¿Qué es gramática?** | What is grammar? (definition) |
| **¿Qué es ésto?** | What is this? (explanation) |

At all other times, except in idioms, the English interrogative "what?" is rendered by **"¿qué?"** in Spanish.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Qué come Vd.?** | What are you eating? |
| **¿Qué estudia María?** | What is Maria studying? |
| **¿Qué escribe Alberto?** | What is Alberto writing? |

**"¿Quién?"** or **"quiénes?"** meaning "who?" or "whom?" refers to persons only.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Quién estudia con Antonio?** | Who is studying with Antonio? |
| **¿Quién tiene mi libro?** | Who has my book? |
| **¿Con quiénes vive Vd.?** | With whom do you live? |
| **¿De quién habla ella?** | Of whom is she speaking? |

**"¿De quién?"** or **"¿de quiénes"** meaning "whose?" is always followed immediately by the verb when used as an interrogative.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿De quién es esta tarjeta?** | Whose card is this? |
| **¿De quién es este carro?** | Whose car is this? |
| **¿De quién es esa pluma?** | Whose pen is that? |
| **¿De quién es ese libro?** | Whose book is that? |

**NOTICE:** When this interrogative word is not used with the verb "to be" (ser), it has the following Spanish sentence construction:
Object/ Interrogative Word/ Verb/ Subject

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿El carro/ de quién/ maneja/ él?** | Whose car does he drive? |
| **¿El reloj/ de quién/ trae/ Vd.?** | Whose watch do you have? |

**"¿Cuánto(a)?"** meaning "how much" and **"¿cuántos(as)?"** meaning "how many?" are used as pronouns or as adjectives.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuánto cuesta el libro?** | How much does the book cost? |
| **¿Cuánto dinero gana Vd.?** | How much money do you earn? |
| **¿Cuántos van al pueblo?** | How many are going to town? |
| **¿Cuántas personas trabajan aquí?** | How many persons work here? |

### VOCABULARY

la señorita—Miss, the young lady
el señor—Mr., Sir, the man
el pariente—the relative
la gente—the people
el esposo—the husband
los padres—the parents
el oficial—the officer, the official
el mayordomo—the foreman
el documento—the document
la fe de bautismo—the baptismal certificate
el acta de nacimiento—the birth certificate
el papel—the paper
la ley—the law
el problema—the problem
la cosa—the thing
el nombre—the name
la cortada—the cut, cut scar
el lunar—the mole
la mano—the hand
la ocupación—the occupation
la ayuda—the help
la ciudadanía—the citizenship
los Estados Unidos—the United States
la semana—the week
la semana que viene—next week
el año que viene—next year
legal—legal
derecho—right, straight
nuevo—new
siete—seven
muy bien—very well
sí—yes
porque—because
con—with

### EXERCISE

1. What are you doing with this document?
2. Whose card do you have?
3. Who has your baptismal certificate?
4. Do you (pl) have your birth certificate (on you)?
5. What kind of legal papers do you have?
6. How many relatives do you have?
7. What do you have (on you)?
8. Do you have cuts or moles?
9. Yes sir, I have a cut scar on my right hand.[2]
10. A week has seven days.
11. Is she going with us next week?
12. I don't have my brother's documents.
13. This man has my things.
14. This girl comes and goes every day.
15. Does she have a husband?
16. Why do you want a visa?
17. The foreman is asking for help.
18. These men do not know anything (nada).
19. Manuel does not know the officer's name.
20. Why are you losing your citizenship next year?
21. Do your parents obtain visas every year?
22. Why do you always lie?
23. They do not understand the problem.
24. These people want new visas, because they understand the laws of the United States.
25. Mrs. Silva[3] knows the Spanish lessons very well.

---

[2] The definite article instead of the possessive is used with parts of the body and articles of clothing.

[3] A proper name modified by a title requires the definite article immediately before the title except in direct address.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **La señorita López está enferma.** | Miss Lopez is sick. |
| | **El señor García no está aquí.** | Mr. Garcia is not here. |
| But: | **Buenos días, señor Valdez.** | Good morning, Mr. Valdez. |

## Lesson VII

## "SER" AND "ESTAR"

**The verbs "ser" and "estar" both meaning "to be," are irreguglar in the present indicative tense. These verbs are never used interchangeably without altering the meaning of the sentence.**

| *Ser* | | *Estar* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **soy** | **somos** | **estoy** | **estamos** |
| **eres** | | **estás** | |
| **es** | **son** | **está** | **están** |

**"Estar" is used:**

To show location or position (place where a person or thing is, temporarily or permanently).

| | |
|---|---|
| **El libro está en la mesa.** | The book is on the table. |
| **Juárez está en México.** | Juarez is in Mexico. |
| **¿En dónde está Benito?** | Where is Benito? |

To express a condition that is accidental or temporary.

| | |
|---|---|
| **La mujer está enferma.** | The woman is sick. |
| **El agua está fría.** | The water is cold. |
| **La muchacha está pálida.** | The girl is pale. |

With a past participle to express a resultant state. The past participle is used as an adjective and as such, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the sentence.

| | |
|---|---|
| **El libro está bien escrito.** | The book is well written |
| **Lu mujer está sentada.** | The woman is seated. |
| **La puerta está cerrada.** | The door is closed. |

With a present participle to express progressive action. (Progressive action will be discussed later in this lesson.)

**"Ser" is used at all other times. Generally "ser" expresses a state or condition that is natural or inherent and essentially lasting rather than accidental or occasional. Such conditions may show: age, character, financial status, appearance, origin, ownership, material of which a thing is made, occupation, nationality, time expressions, impersonal expressions. It is always used before a predicate noun or pronoun.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mi tío e viejo.** | My uncle is old. (age) |
| **Ella es una mujer buena.** | She is a good woman (character) |
| **Él es rico.** | He is rich. (financial status) |
| **Olga es muy bonita.** | Olga is very pretty. (appearance) |
| **Yo soy de México.** | I am from Mexico. (origin) |

| | |
|---|---|
| **El libro es de Simón.** | The book is Simon's. (possession) |
| **El anillo es de oro.** | The ring is gold. (material) |
| **Él es médico**[1]**.** | He is a doctor. (occupation) |
| **Él es un buen médico.** | He is a good doctor. (predicate noun) |
| **Hoy es miércoles.** | Today is Wednesday. (time) |
| **Son las dos y media.** | It is two-thirty. (time) |
| **Ellos son mexicanos.** | They are Mexicans. (nationality) |
| **¿De qué color es el libro?** | What color is the book? (appearance) |
| **Es imposible hacerlo.** | It is impossible to do it. (impersonal expression) |
| **Es él.** | It is he. (predicate pronoun) |

### PRESENT PARTICIPLES

The present participle of a verb is formed by adding "ando" to the stem of "AR" verbs and **"iendo"** to the stem of "ER" and "IR" verbs. The English present participle ends in "ing."

**Habl(ar)—hablando**—speaking
**Com(er)—comiendo**—eating
**Viv(ir)—viviendo**—living

There are very few verbs which have any irregularities in the present participle. These irregularities occur in the stem of the verb, so these verbs are considered stem changing; all are third conjugation verbs.

**Decir—diciendo**—saying, telling
**Mentir—mintiendo**—lying
**Pedir—pidiendo**—asking for
**Morir—muriendo**—dying
**Seguir—siguiendo**—following, continuing

### PROGRESSIVE ACTION

Progressive action is a word for word translation of the verb. The present progressive is used for a portrayal of an action in progress. Most uses of the progressive in Spanish emphasize what is going on at that moment. The present tense of the verb **"estar"** is used before the present participle of a verb to express progressive action in the present time.

**Estar trabajando**—to be working

**Yo estoy trabajando**—I am working

---

[1] The indefinite article is omitted before an unmodified predicate noun in the Spanish sentence.

**Tú estás trabajando**—You are working
**Él está trabajando**—He is working
**Ella está trabajando**—She is working
**Usted está trabajando**—You are working

**Nosotros estamos trabajando**—We are working
**Ellos están trabajando**—They are working (M)
**Ellas están trabajando**—They are working (F)
**Ustedes están trabajando**—You are working

**NOTICE:** The present participle remains constantly the same for all persons. The present participle will be the same for all persons in all tenses. Only the conjugation of the verb "estar" will change to agree with the subject.

The verbs **"ir," "andar,"** and **"seguir"** are also often used with the present participle for an even stronger progressive meaning. These forms give the idea of "keeping on," "continuing," or "progressing."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Pedro va comiendo por el camino.** | Pedro keeps on (continues) eating along the road. |
| **Víctor sigue caminando.** | Victor continues walking. |
| **Gabriel anda trabajando en la labor.** | Gabriel is working in the field (out in the field). |

**"IR," "VENIR," "SALIR,"** and generally other verbs of motion, should be used in the progressive.

### VOCABULARY

**el presidente**—the president
**el hijo**—the son
**el sobrino**—the nephew
**el primo**—the cousin
**el padre**—the father, the priest
**el hermano**—the brother
**el trabajador**—the worker, the laborer
**el cuñado**—the brother-in-law
**el ciudadano**—the citizen
**la tienda**—the store
**la fábrica**—the factory
**los pantalones**—the pants, the trousers
**el saco**—the coat
**la camioneta**—the small truck (pickup), station wagon
**la verdad**—the truth
**el color**—the color
**el sábado**—Saturday
**al pueblo**—to town

**bonito**—pretty

**mojado**—wet
**grande**—large, big
**alto**—high, tall
**mexicano**—Mexican
**enfermo**—sick, ill
**viejo**—old
**esta noche**—tonight
**aquí**—here
**allí**—there
**ahora**—now
**ahorita**—right now
**muy**—very
**por**—per, through, by, for
**de**—from, of
**pero**—but
**y**—and
**mentir**—to lie
**valer**—to be worth
**¿qué tan lejos?**—how far?

### EXERCISE

1. Are you a Mexican citizen?
2. Where are your papers?
3. This house is very big
4. Who is the president of Mexico?
5. Where is Rogelio working now?
6. They are always sick.
7. Miss Garcia is not pretty, because she is very old.
8. Your nephew is from Mexico, but what is he doing here?
9. Yes sir, they are from Puebla.
10. These are Pedro's pants.
11. Miss Cabaza is not very tall.
12. Our papers are wet.
13. This boy is that woman's son.
14. My father and brother are in California, but they are from Mexico.
15. You are lying right now.
16. The man's brother-in-law is not here.
17. How far is the store from your house?
18. You are not telling the truth.
19. How much are you earning per month?
20. What time is it?[2]
21. How much is your station wagon worth?
22. My cousin is from Mexico, and he is working in a factory there.
23. Today is Saturday, and we are going to town tonight.
24. Mr. Moreno is a good worker, but he is always sick.
25. (Of) What color is your new coat?

---

[2] The pronoun "it" is not translated to Spanish when it is used as the subject of the English sentence. This also is true when "it" is used as the predicate nominative in English.

## LESSON VIII

## "TENER" AND "HABER"

The verbs **"tener"** and **"haber,"** both meaning "to have," are irregular in the present indicative tense.

| *Tener* | | *Haber* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tengo | tenemos | he | hemos |
| tienes | | has | |
| tiene | tienen | ha | han |

**"Tener"** means "to have" showing possession and is not to be used interchangeably with **"haber,"** which means "to have" as an auxiliary verb in forming the compound tenses.

### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

The present perfect indicative tense (called "perfect" by many grammarians) is formed by placing the present tense of the auxiliary verb **"haber"** immediately in front of the past participle of the main verb. No word can come between the auxiliary verb and the past participle.

The past participle of regular verbs is formed by adding **"ado"** to the stem of verbs of the first conjugation and **"ido"** to the stem of verbs of the second and third conjugations.

**Tom(ar)—tomado**
**Com(er)—comido**
**Viv(ir)—vivido**

| *Tomar* | *Comer* | *Vivir* |
|---|---|---|
| he tomado | he comido | he vivido |
| has tomado | has comido | has vivido |
| ha tomado | ha comido | ha vivido |
| hemos tomado | hemos comido | hemos vivido |
| han tomado | han comido | han vivido |

| | |
|---|---|
| **He tomado un examen hoy.** | I have taken an exam today. |
| **Hemos comido mucho.** | We have eaten a lot. |
| **Ella ha vivido aquí por mucho tiempo.** | She has lived here for a long time. |

*Irregular Past Participles*

| *Infinitive* | *Past Participle* |
|---|---|
| **abrir**—to open | **abierto**—open(ed) |
| **cubrir**—to cover | **cubierto**—covered |
| **decir**—to say, to tell | **dicho**—said, told |
| **escribir**—to write | **escrito**—written |

| *Infinitive* | *Past Participle* |
|---|---|
| **hacer**—to do, to make | **hecho**—done, made |
| **morir**—to die | **muerto**—dead, died |
| **poner**—to put, to place | **puesto**—put, placed |
| **romper**—to tear | **roto**—torn |
| **volver**—to return | **vuelto**—returned |
| **ver**—to see | **visto**—seen |

The following past participles require a written accent over the "i".

| | |
|---|---|
| **caer**—to fall | **caído**—fallen |
| **creer**—to believe | **creído**—believed |
| **leer**—to read | **leído**—read |
| **oír**—to hear | **oído**—heard |
| **traer**—to bring | **traído**—brought |

### IDIOMATIC USE OF "HAY"

The phrases "there is," "there are," "is there?," and "are there?" are translated by the single Spanish word **"hay"** or **"¿hay?."**

| | |
|---|---|
| **No hay nadie en el cuarto.** | There is nobody in the room. |
| **Hay muchos extranjeros en Texas.** | There are many aliens in Texas. |
| **¿Hay mucha gente allí?** | Are there many people there? |
| **¿Hay patrulleros en ese lugar?** | Are there any patrolmen at that place? |

### IDIOMATIC USE OF "TENER"

**"Tener"** is commonly used to indicate age.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuántos años tiene Vd.?** | How old are you? |
| **Tengo veinte años.** | I am twenty years old. |

**"Tener"** is used with a personal subject in the following idioms:

**tener (mucho) calor**—to be (very) warm
**tener cuidado**—to be careful
**tener la cupla**—to be at fault, to be guilty
**tener (mucho) frío**—to be (very) old
**tener (mucha) hambre**—to be (very) hungry
**tener (mucha) sed**—to be (very) thirsty
**tener miedo**—to be afraid
**tener sueño**—to be sleepy
**tener razón**—to be right
**no tener razón**—to be wrong

## VOCABULARY

**el extranjero**—the alien
**el amigo**—the friend
**el papá**—the father
**la esposa**—the wife
**la calle**—the street
**la cicatriz**—the scar
**el avión**—the airplane
**la mesa**—the table
**la silla**—the chair
**el cuarto**—the room
**la puerta**—the door
**el libro**—the book
**la tinta**—the ink
**el sombrero**—the hat
**el rancho**—the ranch
**el país**—the country
**la línea**—the line
**alguien**—somebody, someone
**verde**—green
**tres**—three
**doce**—twelve
**antes**—before
**alguna vez**—ever
**varias veces**—several times
**por mucho tiempo**—for a long time

## EXERCISE

1. There is a book on the table.
2. Are you very sleepy?
3. Why have you lied?
4. There are twelve chairs in the room.
5. How is your wife?
6. I have not seen that man before.
7. Where is the letter? There it is!
8. We have brought our documents today.
9. We haven't opened the door.
10. His friend does not have money.
11. Has he seen Pedro's scar?
12. Has your father crossed the line before?
13. I have taken the car to town.
14. What have you done today?
15. They have gone to town several times.
16. Are there men on that ranch?
17. He has not told the truth.
18. The lawyer has sold false papers before.
19. Somebody has put the ink on the table.
20. The alien has returned to the United States illegally.
21. Have you ever been in Chicago?
22. How many times have you returned to this country?
23. Does your boss have a green airplane?
24. He is very careful when he crosses the street.
25. I am very hungry and very thirsty, because I have not eaten anything (nada) for a long time.

## LESSON IX

## DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

The direct object (noun or pronoun) of a sentence is the complement or "completer" of a verb of action. It receives the action of the verb directly; that is, the direct object is acted upon by the subject. It answers "what" when it is referring to things. For example:

| | |
|---|---|
| John throws the ball.<br>What does John throw? | Answer: the ball; therefore, ball is the direct object noun. |
| Mary loses the pencils.<br>What does Mary lose? | Answer: the pencils; therefore pencils is the direct object noun. |
| Pablo reads the lesson.<br>What does Pablo read? | Answer: the lesson; therefore, lesson is the direct object noun. |

All the direct objects underlined have been nouns. When a pronoun is substituted for each noun, the sentences read:

John throws it.
Mary loses them.
Pablo reads it.

The above underlined words are direct object pronouns. In a normal conversation one does not repeat the noun after it has already been established; in other words, one does not say: John throws the ball. John throws the ball fast. John throws the ball to first base. Instead, one says: John throws the ball. He throws it fast. He throws it to first base. Because of this normal trend in conversation, object pronouns are very important both in English and in Spanish. Since hardly anything is neuter in Spanish, we have to substitute object pronouns that agree both in number and gender with the noun they are replacing. Spanish direct object pronouns for things are:

lo—it (masculine)
la—it (feminine)
los—them (masculine)
las—them (feminine)

In English, while converting the noun into a pronoun the position of the direct object is not affected.

John throws it. subject/ verb/ direct object pronoun/

John throws the ball. subject/ verb/ direct object noun/

In Spanish, a direct object noun has the same position as in English.

John tira la pelota. subject/ verb/ direct object noun/

This is not so when a direct object pronoun is used in the Spanish sentence. The rules for the position of object pronouns in the Spanish sentence are:

Immediately before a conjugated verb.

| | |
|---|---|
| John la tira. | John throws it. |

Immediately before a governing verb or attached to the infinitive that accompanies the governing verb. (Will be discussed later.)

Immediately before the conjugated form of the verb **"haber"** when dealing with the perfect tenses.

| | |
|---|---|
| John la ha tirado. | John has thrown it. |

Immediately before the conjugated form of the verb **"estar"** or attached to the present participle when dealing with the progressive tenses.

| | |
|---|---|
| John la está tirando. | John is throwing it. |
| or | |
| John está tirándola. | John is throwing it. |

Attached to positive commands, but before negative commands. (Will be discussed later.)

The direct object can also be referring to a person or persons. It still receives the action of the verb, but in this case the direct object answers "whom".

| | |
|---|---|
| Jane sees John.<br>Whom does Jane see? | Answer: John; therefore, John is the direct object noun. |
| Mary sees the men.<br>Whom does Mary see? | Answer: the men; therefore, men is the direct object noun. |
| John sees the woman.<br>Whom does John see? | Answer: the woman; therefore, woman is the direct object noun. |

In Spanish, whenever the direct object is a definite person noun, it is introduced by the personal "a":

| | |
|---|---|
| Jane ve a John. | Jane sees John. |
| Mary ve a los hombres. | Mary sees the men. |
| John ve a la mujer. | John sees the woman. |

If pronouns are substituted for the direct object nouns, the sentences will read:

Jane sees him.
Mary sees them.
John sees her.

The English direct object pronouns for people and their Spanish equivalents are:

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **me**—me | **nos**—us |
| **te**—you (familiar) | |
| **le, lo**—him | **les, los**—them (m) |
| **la**—her | **las**—them (f) |
| **le, lo** (m), **la** (f)—you | **les, los** (m), **las** (f)—you |

The position of object pronouns for persons is the same as that of things. If ambiguity exists when direct object pronouns in the third person singular are used, they may be explained further by the use of the prepositional pronoun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Jane le ve (a él).** | Jane sees him. |
| **Mary les ve (a ellos).** | Mary sees them. |
| **John la ve (a ella).** | John sees her. |

### VOCABULARY

**la regla**—the rule
**la comida**—the food
**la cuenta**—the bill
**el lado**—the side
**el bolsillo**—the purse
**la iglesia**—the church
**la oficina**—the office
**las armas**—the guns, weapons
**los abuelos**—the grandparents
**el domingo**—Sunday
**caro**—expensive
**barato**—cheap
**legal**—legal
**otro**—other, another
**ya**—already, yet
**también**—also, too
**todavía**—still, not yet
**en casa**—at home
**a menudo**—often
**casi**—almost
**una vez**—once, one time
**de vez en cuando**—from time to time
**en el otro lado**—on the other side
**pasar de contrabando**—to smuggle
**buscar**—to look for, seek
**visitar**—to visit
**aprender**—to learn

### EXERCISE NO. 1

1. Josefa has my legal papers. She has them in her purse.
2. We have bought false papers before. We have bought them there.
3. He has not seen your pistol. Do you have it with you?
4. Where do you (pl) buy these documents? We buy them on the other side.
5. We buy our food in that store. It is not very expensive there.
6. Miguel is selling his house. He is selling it cheap.
7. Do you understand the rules? Yes, I have already learned them.
8. I have the guns at home. My wife has already seen them.

9. He has crossed the river before. He crosses it every week.
10. Have you seen Felipe? No, I haven't seen him yet.
11. I have brought my family from Mexico. Why have you brought them here illegally?
12. The officers have arrested these aliens before. They have also deported them before.
13. Do you smuggle aliens? How do you smuggle them?
14. Have you (pl) seen my wife? Yes, we see her at the store from time to time.
15. We see Gabriel and his sister every week. We see them in church every Sunday.
16. Timoteo visits his grandparents often. He visits them once a week.
17. The officers are looking for Eduardo and Pancho. They are looking for them because they are here illegally.
18. Does he know you very well? No, he doesn't know me very well.
19. Have you paid the bill? Yes, I have already paid it.
20. Why haven't you taken these documents to the Immigration Office? I haven't taken them because I do not know where it is.

### INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

Indirect object nouns or pronouns name the person or persons to or for whom the subject gives or does something. It receives the action of the verb indirectly. It may be a prepositional phrase in English, but in Spanish it is always considered the indirect object. The indirect object answers "to whom" or "for whom."

Martha gives John a camera.
or
Martha gives a camera to John.
To whom does Martha give a camera?

Answer: to John; therefore, John is the indirect object.

She makes Jane a dress.
or
She makes a dress for Jane.
For whom does she make a dress?

Answer: for Jane; therefore, Jane is the indirect object.

If a pronoun is substituted for each of the indirect object nouns above, the sentences will read:

Martha gives him a camera.
or
Martha gives a camera to him.

She makes her a dress.
or
She makes a dress for her.

The English indirect object pronouns and their Spanish equivalents are:

| *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|
| **me**—me | **nos**—us |
| **te**—you (familiar) | |
| **le**—him, her, you | **les**—them, you |

Since "**le**" may mean "you," "him," or "her," the speaker may want to explain further by adding "**a Vd.**," "**a él,**" or "**a ella**" respectively. "**Les**" may be clarified by "**a Vds.**," "**a ellos,**" or "**a ellas.**"

| | |
|---|---|
| **Martha le da una cámara a él.** | Martha gives him a camera. |
| **Ella le hace un vestido a ella.** | She makes her a dress. |

The position of indirect object pronouns in the Spanish sentence is the same as direct object pronouns.

An indirect object noun is often anticipated by the use of the indirect object pronoun. Although the indirect object pronoun is not always required, it is better Spanish to use it. The indirect object noun in Spanish is always introduced by the personal "a."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él le paga a José muy poco.** | He pays Jose very little. |
| **Luis le ha dado a María su anillo.** | Luis has given Maria his ring. |
| **Yo le he escrito a mi esposa hoy.** | I have written to my wife today. |

The following verbs almost invariably take indirect objects:

**ayudar**—to help
**comprar**—to buy
**dar**—to give
**deber**—to owe
**decir**—to say, to tell
**escribir**—to write
**robar**—to steal
**pagar**—to pay
**pedir**—to ask for
**pedir prestado**—to borrow

"**Comprar,**" "**pedir prestado,**"[1] and "**robar**" require an object pronoun and an impersonal "a" before their objects. The preposition "from" is not translated to Spanish.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo le compro el diario a Pepe.** | I buy the newspaper from Pepe. |
| **Él le pide prestado el carro a Mike.** | He borrows the car from Mike. |
| **Él le roba dinero a su padre.** | He steals money from his father. |

---

[1] "**Prestado**" agrees with the thing borrowed in gender and number.

### VOCABULARY

**el comerciante**—the merchant
**la cuñada**—the sister-in-law
**el compañero**—the companion
**el zapatero**—the shoemaker
**el diario**—the newspaper
**el periódico**—the newspaper
**la información**—the information
**el radio**—the radio
**el cinto**—the belt
**la bicicleta**—the bicycle
**el ganado**—the cattle
**algo**—something, anything
**alguna cosa**—something, anything
**correcto**—correct
**tocante a**—about (concerning)
**leer**—to read
**robar**—to steal

### EXERCISE NO. 2

1. He is giving me his correct name.
2. She is reading the newspaper to us.
3. Have you written Mary this week?
4. We are buying the belts from Mr. Jones.
5. Osvaldo is selling his bicycle to Pepe.
6. Have you asked him for money?
7. Haven't you (pl) asked the consul for a permit?
8. Why don't you borrow the radio from Martin?
9. He is borrowing $5.00 from his sister-in-law.
10. He has stolen many things from that merchant.
11. Has he stolen anything from you?
12. He is telling the officer the truth.
13. She has not given us the passports.
14. I am asking them for more information about (concerning) their companions.
15. He is buying the cattle from Mr. Aguilar.
16. She is giving the passport to Consuelo.
17. They have given the officer a lot of information.
18. Have you helped those aliens before?
19. He has never helped us before.
20. Have you paid the shoemaker the bill?

When a sentence contains a direct and indirect object pronoun they may not be split in the Spanish sentence and the indirect always precedes the direct.

| | |
|---|---|
| **John ya *me* lo ha pagado.** | John has already paid *it to me.* |
| **Mary *nos* lo ha vendido.** | Mary has sold *it to us.* |

For the sake of sound, when both object pronouns begin with the letter "l," the indirect object pronoun, whether singular or plural, becomes "se" in the Spanish sentence.

1. **Juan *le* lo da. = Juan *se* lo da.**—Juan gives *it to him.*
2. **Mary *les* los vende. = Mary *se* los vende.**—Mary sells *them to them.*

## EXERCISE NO. 3

1. Why is he showing it to us?
2. We are sending them to them.
3. Andres has asked us for it (f).
4. Guillermo is paying them (f) to me now.
5. We have crossed it with him many times.
6. He is buying it from him for (por) $10.00.
7. Who is selling it (f) for us?
8. Why don't you ask him for them (f)?
9. He has stolen it from the merchant.
10. They have already given it to them.
11. Have you sent it (f) to Susana?
12. Has he borrowed it from Miss Peña?
13. Jaime has told it to me many times.
14. I have already bought it from Mr. Garza.
15. Who sends them (f) to you?

## LESSON X

## GOVERNING VERBS

**"Ir a"** with an infinitive has the same meaning of intention which is expressed by "going to do something," in English. It forms a future expression with its starting point either at the present or at a past time, according to the tense assumed by **"ir."**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Luis va a mandármelo[1] mañana.** | Luis is going to send it to me tomorrow. |
| **or** | |
| **Luis me lo[1] va a mandar mañana.** | |
| **¿Va a sacarlo Vd. hoy?** | Are you going to take it out today? |
| **or** | |
| **¿Lo va a sacar Vd. hoy?** | |

**"Tener que"** denotes obligation or necessity to perform the action expressed by the following infinitive. **"Tener que"** plus infinitive translates "have or must do something" in English.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo tengo que ir al pueblo hoy.** | I have to go to town today. |
| **¿Tiene Vd. que hacerlo ahorita?** | Dou you have to do it right now? |
| **or** | |
| **¿Lo tiene que hacer Vd. ahorita?** | |

**"Querer"** plus infinitive means "to want or to wish to do something."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Simón quiere trabajar aquí.** | Simon wants to work here. |
| **¿Quiere Vd. sacar un pasaporte?** | Do you want to take out a passporté |

**"Poder"** is a true auxiliary and it corresponds to the English "be able," and expresses physical power or ability, generally represented in English by the defective verb "can."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo no puedo hacerlo ahorita.** | I can not do it right now. |
| **or** | |
| **Yo no lo puedo hacer ahorita.** | |
| **¿Puede Vd. trabajar ocho horas al día?** | Can you work eight hours a day? |

---

[1] Object pronouns (direct or indirect or both) can either be attached to the infinitive or be placed immediately before the conjugated governing verb. If two object pronouns are attached to the infinitive, a written accent is required on the original stress of the infinitive.

**"Pensar'** plus infinitive means "to intend or to plan to do something."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Antonio piensa venir acá el año que viene.** | Antonio plans (intends) to come here next year. |
| **¿Piensan Vds. cruzar ilegalmente otra vez?** | Do you intend (plan) to cross illegally again? |

**"Saber"** before an infinitive denotes knowledge or mental ability. **"Saber"** in English as a governing verb means "to know how to do something." "How" should not be translated to Spanish.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo sé hacer esa clase de trabajo.** | I know how to do that type of work. |
| **Ellos ya saben leer.** | They already know how to read. |

**"Deber (de)"** placed as an auxiliary verb before an infinitive expressed the ideas of duty, obligation or undefined necessity which are represented in English by the defective verbals, "ought" or "should."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Benito debe (de) comprarlo pronto.** | Benito should buy it soon. |
| **Nosotros debemos estudiar más.** | We ought to study more. |

**"Tratar de"** plus infinitive means "to try or to attempt to do something."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ellos han tratado de brincar la línea muchas veces.** | They have tried (attempted) to jump the line many times. |
| **¿Ha tratado Vd. de sacar una visa antes?** | Have you tried (attempted) to take out a visa before? |

**"Acabar de,"** preceding an infinitive, usually expresses an action completed in the immediate past or an action completed in conjunction with another event. The time expressed depends upon the tense used. **"Acabar de"** in the present tense expresses an action just completed while the imperfect tense denotes a past action completed in conjunction with another event.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ricardo acaba de llegar.** | Ricardo has just arrived. |
| **¿Acaban ellos de salir?** | Have they just left? |

### PSEUDO-GOVERNING VERBS

The following verbs when followed by an infinitive are considered pseudo-governing verbs. Care should be taken in reference to the position of object pronouns with these verbs. A pronoun may depend either upon the infinitive or the preceding verb, according to the meaning intended, in which case each pronoun accompanies the verb to which it belongs.

**aprender a**—to learn
**ayudar a**—to help
**comenzar a (ie)**—to start, to begin
**dejar**—to let, to allow
**dejar de**—to stop, to cease doing something
**enseñar a**—to teach
**venir a**—to come

### VOCABULARY

**el cónsul**—the consul
**el tractor**—the tractor
**la tarde**—the afternoon
**el lugar**—the place
**la cita**—the appointment, the date
**mañana por la mañana**—tomorrow morning
**mañana por la noche**—tomorrow night
**otra vez**—again
**lo más pronto posible**—as soon as possible
**sin**—without
**como**—as
**firmar**—to sign
**hallar**—to find
**manejar**—to drive

### EXERCISE

1. Do you know how to drive a tractor?
2. Is he going to work tomorrow morning?
3. We can't go this afternoon.
4. We have to sign this paper as soon as possible.
5. Do you (pl) know how to read and write?
6. Has he tried to cross illegally before?
7. She wants to be with her husband as soon as possible.
8. They plan to return tomorrow night.
9. Have you just returned from Mexico?
10. I ought to pay him today.
11. You should buy it from him.
12. You have to leave this place right now.
13. How has Antonio been able to find work in the United States?
14. What is he going to do tonight?
15. I have tried to do it before.
16. They have just entered, but haven't been able to find work.
17. To whom does he plan to give it?
18. We have just arrived in this city.
19. Don't you know that you can not take it with you?
20. Do you help him smuggle aliens into the United States?
21. Do they allow you to see the consul without an appointment?
22. Does Jorge start to work (working) very early?
23. Why have you stopped working as a nurse?
24. Do you plan to come to the United States illegally again?
25. He tries to get (obtain) a visa every year, but they can not give him one because he is sick.

2

## Lesson XI

### POLITE COMMAND OF REGULAR VERBS

The polite command of regular verbs is obtained by using the stem of the first person singular of the present indicative tense and adding the following endings:

| For "ar" verbs, add: | For "er" and "ir" verbs, add: |
|---|---|
| "e"—singular | "a"—singular |
| "en"—plural | "an"—plural |

| | Present tense, 1st person | | Command | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Infinitive | Singular | Stem | Singular | Plural |
| **llevar** | **yo llevo** | **llev** | **lleve Vd.** | **lleven Vds.** |
| **aprender** | **yo aprendo** | **aprend** | **aprenda Vd.** | **aprendan Vds.** |
| **abrir** | **yo abro** | **abr** | **abra Vd.** | **abran Vds.** |

"Vd." and "Vds." are used respectively as the subject of the command. They may be omitted. The negative word "no" is placed before the affirmative command to make it a polite negative command. Object pronouns (direct, indirect, or both) are attached to affirmative commands and are placed immediately before a negative command. If an object pronoun is attached to a multi-syllable command, a written accent is required on the original stress of the command.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Lléveselo Vd.** | Take it to him. |
| **No se lo lleve Vd.** | Don't take it to him. |
| **Apréndala bien.** | Learn it well. |
| **No la aprenda bien.** | Don't learn it well. |
| **Abran Vds. sus libros.** | Open your books. |
| **No abran Vds. sus libros.** | Don't open your books. |

### POLITE COMMAND OF IRREGULAR VERBS

The polite command of irregular verbs is obtained by using the stem of the first person singular of the present indicative tense and adding the same vowel endings as for the formation of commands of regular verbs.

| | Present tense, 1st person | | Command | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Infinitive | Singular | Stem | Singular | Plural |
| **tener** | **yo tengo** | **teng** | **tenga Vd.** | **tengan Vds.** |
| **hacer** | **yo hago** | **hag** | **haga Vd.** | **hagan Vds.** |
| **poner** | **yo pongo** | **pong** | **ponga Vd.** | **pongan Vds.** |
| **traer** | **yo traigo** | **traig** | **traiga Vd.** | **traigan Vds.** |

| *Infinitive* | *Present tense, 1st person singular* | *Stem* | *Command* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| **ver** | **yo veo** | **ve** | **vea Vd.** | **vean Vds.** |
| **decir** | **yo digo** | **dig** | **diga Vd.** | **digan Vds.** |
| **venir** | **yo vengo** | **veng** | **venga Vd.** | **vengan Vds.** |
| **salir** | **yo salgo** | **salg** | **salga Vd.** | **salgan Vds.** |
| **oír** | **yo oigo** | **oig** | **oiga Vd.** | **oigan Vds.** |

## POLITE COMMAND OF RADICAL CHANGING VERBS

The polite command of radical changing verbs is obtained by applying the same rule as for the formation of commands for regular and irregular verbs.

| *Infinitive* | *Present tense, 1st person Singular* | *Stem* | *Command* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | *Singular* | *Plural* |
| **cerrar** | **yo cierro** | **cierr** | **cierre Vd.** | **cierren Vds.** |
| **entender** | **yo entiendo** | **entiend** | **entienda Vd.** | **entiendan Vds.** |
| **mentir** | **yo miento** | **mient** | **mienta Vd.** | **mientan Vds.** |

In order to retain the "k" sound in any verb ending in "car" (brincar, sacar, buscar, etc.), change the "c" to "qu" before adding "e" or "en".

| | |
|---|---|
| **brinque Vd.** | **brinquen Vds.** |
| **saque Vd.** | **saquen Vds.** |
| **busque Vd.** | **busquen Vds.** |

In order to retain the hard "g" sound in any verb ending in "gar" (pagar, llegar, rogar, etc.), change the "g" to "gu" before adding "e" or "en".

| | |
|---|---|
| **pague Vd.** | **paguen Vds.** |
| **llegue Vd.** | **llegguen Vds.** |
| **ruegue Vd.** | **ruegen Vds.** |

The following verbs do not follow the above rules and should be memorized:

| | *Singular* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| **estar**—to be | **esté Vd.** | **estén Vds.** |
| **dar**—to give | **dé Vd.** | **den Vds.** |
| **ir**—to go | **vaya Vd.** | **vayan Vds.** |
| **ser**—to be | **sea Vd.** | **sean Vds.** |
| **saber**—to know | **sepa Vd.** | **sepan Vds.** |

With commands come new verbs. Following is a good starting list.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Aflojar** | to relax, to loosen |
| **Alzar** | to raise, lift, pick up (articles) |
| **Apear** | to get out of (car, bus, etc.), to get down |
| **Apurarse** | to hurry (up), to hasten |
| **Bajar (se) (de)** | to get out of (car, bus, etc.), to get down, to climb down |
| **Deletrear** | to spell |
| **Enseñar** | to teach, to show |
| **Firmar** | to sign |
| **Pararse** | to stop, to stand (up) |
| **Seguir** | to follow, to pursue |
| **Soltar** | to relax, release, untie, let go, free (radical changing verb) |
| **Subir (se) (a)** | to get into (car, bus, etc.), to climb up |

Following is a group of commands that may be helpful to the beginner. Some are given with reflexive pronouns which will be explained later.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Enséñeme su pasaporte** | Show me your passport. |
| **Alce las manos** | Raise your hands. |
| **Súbase al carro** | Get in the car. |
| **Bájese del carro** | Get out of the car. |
| **Apéese del tren** | Get out of the train. |
| **Sígame** | Follow me. |
| **Párese** | Stop. or Stand up. |
| **Alto** | Stop. |
| **Suelte la mano** | Relax your hand. |
| **Afloje la mano** | Relax your hand. |
| **Dígame la verdad** | Tell me the truth. |
| **Enséñame la vereda** | Show me the trail. |
| **Ponga sus cosas en la mesa** | Put your things on the table. |
| **Apúrese** | Hurry up. |
| **Andéle** | Hurry up. |
| **Deletréeme su nombre** | Spell your name for me. |
| **Tráigalo** | Bring it. |
| **Pídale al cónsul una visa** | Ask the consul for a visa. |
| **Dígame otra vez** | Tell me again. |
| **Cómprelo** | Buy it. |
| **Venga acá** | Come here. |
| **Vaya allá** | Go over there. |
| **Búsquelo** | Look for it. |
| **Déme la navaja** | Give me the knife. |
| **Vaya a la oficina** | Go to the office. |
| **Váyase** | Go away. |
| **Esté aquí mañana** | Be here tomorrow. |
| **Dígame el nombre de su patrón** | Tell me your boss's name. |
| **Hágala ahorita** | Do it now. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Inclínese contra la pared** .......... | Lean against the wall. |
| **Párese contra la pared** ............ | Stand against the wall. |
| **Firme su nombre aquí** ............ | Sign your name here. |
| **Repita, por favor** ................. | Repeat, please. |
| **Hable en voz más alta** ............ | Speak louder. |
| **Quítese el sombrero** ............... | Take off your hat. |
| **Perdóneme** ........................ | Excuse me. or Pardon me. |
| **Siéntese** ........................... | Sit down. |
| **Voltéese** ........................... | Turn around. |
| **Hable más despacio** ............... | Speak slower. |
| **Mire hacia la pared** ............... | Look towards the wall. |

## FAMILIAR COMMAND OF REGULAR VERBS

The familiar command of regular verbs is obtained from the third person singular of the present indicative tense as it is. The subject "tú" is generally omitted.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contesta tú la carta.** | Answer the letter. |
| **Aprende tú la lección.** | Learn the lesson. |
| **Abre la puerta.** | Open the door. |

The negative familiar command is obtained by adding an "s" to the polite singular command.

| | |
|---|---|
| **No contestes la carta.** | Don't answer the letter. |
| **No aprendas la lección.** | Don't learn the lesson. |
| **No abras la puerta.** | Don't open the door. |

## FAMILIAR COMMAND OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Some familiar commands of irregular verbs do not follow a rule and should be learned separately. The negative familiar command of these verbs is obtained by adding an "s" to the polite singular command. (Subject pronouns are generally not used with familiar commands.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **decir**—to say, tell | **di** | **no digas** |
| **hacer**—to do, make | **haz** | **no hagas** |
| **ir**—to go | **ve** | **no vayas** |
| **poner**—to put, place | **pon** | **no pongas** |
| **salir**—to leave, depart | **sal** | **no salgas** |
| **ser**—to be | **sé** | **no seas** |
| **tener**—to have | **ten** | **no tengas** |
| **venir**—to come | **ven** | **no vengas** |

## FAMILIAR COMMAND OF RADICAL CHANGING VERBS

The familiar command of radical changing verbs is obtained by using the third person singular of the present indicative tense.

| *Infinitive* | *Present tense, 3rd person Singular* | *Familiar Command* |
|---|---|---|
| **cerrar** | **él cierra** | **cierra** |
| **entender** | **él entiende** | **entiende** |
| **mentir** | **él miente** | **miente** |

The negative familiar command of radical changing verbs is obtained by adding an "s" to the polite singular command.

| | |
|---|---|
| **No cierres la puerta.** | **Don't close the door.** |
| **No pidas eso.** | **Don't ask for that.** |
| **No mientas tanto.** | **Don't lie so much.** |

### VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **el camino—the road** | **luego—then** |
| **la pluma—the pen** | **hasta—until** |
| **la caja—the box** | **tan rápido—so fast** |
| **la asignatura—the assignment** | **el cheque—the check** |
| **la cartera—the billfold** | **cerrar—to close** |
| **amarillo—yellow** | **correr—to run** |
| **primero—first** | **esperar—to wait for** |
| **juntos—together** | **subirse a—to get in; climb** |
| **temprano—early** | **abrir—to open** |

### EXERCISE

1. Show me the road.
2. Wait until tomorrow.
3. Help us do the assignment.
4. Don't run so fast.
5. Don't close the door.
6. Tell us the truth.
7. Give it to them.
8. Take us early in your car.
9. Pay us with a check.
10. Let me see your billfold.
11. Get in the car.
12. Don't cross together.

13. Do this first and then open the box.
14. Tell her that her husband is lying.
15. Don't pay him yet.
16. Go home and bring us those documents.
17. Come to the office tomorrow and help me.
18. Bring me his yellow pen, please.
19. Be here early tomorrow.
20. Get a visa as soon as possible.

## LESSON XII

## PRETERITE INDICATIVE TENSE

The preterite indicative tense is used to express a definitely completed past action. It is called by some grammarians the past absolute, past definite, or historical past. The preterite indicative tense simply calls attention to completed action in past time.

To conjugate verbs in the preterite indicative tense, attach the following endings to the stem of the verbs:

**For "ar" verbs: é, aste, ó, amos, aron**
**For "er" verbs: í, iste, ió, imos, ieron**
**For "ir" verbs: í, iste, ió, imos, ieron**

| ***Hablar*** | ***Comer*** | ***Recibir*** |
|---|---|---|
| **hablé** | **comí** | **recibí** |
| **hablaste** | **comiste** | **recibiste** |
| **habló** | **comió** | **recibió** |
| **hablamos** | **comimos** | **recibimos** |
| **hablaron** | **comieron** | **recibieron** |

All regular verbs in the preterite tense bear a written accent over the last vowel in the first and third persons singular. The preterite is used anytime a definite past action is expressed. A specific time does not have to be mentioned.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuántos documentos vendió Vd.?** | How many documents did you sell? |
| **¿(En) donde compró Vd. eso?** | Where did you buy that? |
| **Yo hablé con el ayer.** | I talked to him yesterday. |

There are seventeen verbs that are irregular in the preterite indicative tense. It is an easy tense to learn in that fourteen of these verbs, although possessing irregular stems, take the same irregular preterite endings as follow: "e," "iste," "o," "imos," "ieron."

**NOTICE:** These endings carry no written accents. In these fourteen verbs, those ending in "j" drop the "i" of the "ieron" ending: **"condujeron," "dijeron," "trajeron."** In the third person singular, of **"hacer"** the "c" changes to "z" to retain the original soft "c" sound.

| *Infinitive* | *Irregular Stem* | *Conjugation* |
|---|---|---|
| **andar** | **anduv** ....... | **anduve, anduviste, anduvo, anduvimos, anduvieron** |
| **estar** | **estuv** ........ | **estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvieron** |

| *Infinitive* | *Irregular Stem* | *Conjugation* |
|---|---|---|
| **haber** | **hub** | **hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubieron** |
| **hacer** | **hic** | **hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicieron** |
| **poder** | **pud** | **pude, pudiste, pudo, pudimos, pudieron** |
| **poner** | **pus** | **puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusieron** |
| **tener** | **tuv** | **tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvieron** |
| **venir** | **vin** | **vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinieron** |
| **querer** | **quis** | **quise, quisiste, quiso, quisimos, quisieron** |
| **saber** | **sup** | **supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supieron** |
| **traer** | **traj** | **traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajeron** |
| **decir** | **dij** | **dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijeron** |
| **conducir** | **conduj** | **conduje, condujiste, condujo, condujimos, condujeron** |
| **caber** | **cup** | **cupe, cupiste, cupo, cupimos, cupieron** |

**"Ser"** and **"ir"** are conjugated alike in the preterite indicative tense.

| **Ser**—to be | **Ir**—to go |
|---|---|
| **fuí** | **fuí** |
| **fuiste** | **fuiste** |
| **fué** | **fué** |
| **fuimos** | **fuimos** |
| **fueron** | **fueron** |

**"Dar"** is conjugated like a regular "er" verb in the preterite tense but without the written accents: **di, diste, dio, dimos, dieron.**

Any verb of the second and third conjugation whose stem ends in a vowel changes the unaccented "i" between vowels to "y" as an unaccented "i" may not appear between vowels in Spanish:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Leer**—to read | **leí, leíste, leyó, leímos, leyeron** |
| **Caer**—to fall | **caí, caíste, cayó, caímos, cayeron** |
| **Oír**—to hear | **oí, oíste, oyó, oímos, oyeron** |
| **Creer**—to believe | **creí, creíste, creyó, creímos, creyeron** |

Many verbs appear to be irregular in the preterite, but are only orthographically (spelling) so. The change in spelling is made in order to retain the sound of the final consonant of the stem of the verb. Infinitives ending in **"car"** change the "c" to "qu" before "e" in the first person singular in order to retain the "k" sound. Infinitives ending in "gar" change the "g" to "gu" in the first person singular in order to retain the hard "g" sound.

| | |
|---|---|
| **brincar**—to jump | **brinqué, brincaste brincó, brincamos, brincaron** |
| **buscar**—to look for | **busqué, buscaste, buscó, buscamos, buscaron** |
| **tocar**—to touch | **toqué, tocaste, tocó, tocamos, tocaron** |
| **sacar**—to take out | **saqué, sacaste, sacó, sacamos, sacaron** |
| **llegar**—to arrive | **llegué, llegaste, llegó, llegamos, llegagron** |
| **pagar**—to pay | **pagué, pagaste, pagó, pagamos, pagaron** |
| **rogar**—to beg | **rogué, rogaste, rogó, rogamos, rogaron** |
| **pegar**—to hit | **pegué, pegaste, pegó, pegamos, pegaron** |

Radical changing verbs of the second and third classifications make certain changes in the stem of the verb in the preterite tense. The "o" of the stem changes to "u" in the third persons singular and plural. The "e" of the stem changes to "i" in the third persons singular and plural.

| **mentir**—to lie | | **dormir**—to sleep | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **mentí** | **mentimos** | **dormí** | **dormimos** |
| **mentiste** | | **dormiste** | |
| **mintió** | **mintieron** | **durmió** | **durmieron** |

The following verbs undergo the same changes mentioned above in the preterite tense:

**consentir**—to consent
**divertir**—to amuse
**medir**—to measure
**morir**—to die
**pedir**—to ask for
**preferir**—to prefer
**referir**—to refer
**repetir**—to repeat
**seguir**—to follow
**sentir**—to feel
**servir**—to serve
**vestir**—to dress

## SPECIAL USES OF CERTAIN VERBS IN THE PRETERITE TENSE

Certain verbs have entirely different meanings when they are used in the preterite tense.

"Saber" in the preterite tense means "did find out," or "found out."

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cómo supo Vd. eso?** | How did you find that out? |
| **Yo supe porque él me dijo.** | I found out because he told me. |

**"Querer"** in the preterite tense means "would not." (It should be used only with negative sentences indicating refusal.)

| | |
|---|---|
| **El cónsul no quiso darme una visa.** | The consul would not give me a visa. |
| **Ellos no quisieron hacerlo.** | They would not do it. |

## DIFFERENCE BETWEEN SALIR AND DEJAR

In any tense, **"salir"** means to leave in the sense of departing from a place, whereas, **"dejar"** means to leave someone or something behind or abandoned.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él salió de casa el mes pasado.** | He left home last month. |
| **¿A qué hora sale el tren?** | (At) what times does the train leave? |
| **¿(En) dónde dejó Vd. a su familia?** | Where did you leave your family? |
| **Yo los dejé en Reynosa.** | I left them in Reynosa. |

**"Dejar"** may also be used as a governing verb meaning "to allow," or "to let."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ellos no nos dejaron entrar.** | They did not allow us to enter. |
| **Déjeme ayudarle.** | Let me help you. |
| **¿Le dejaron ellos cruzar?** | Did they let you cross? |

### VOCABULARY

el padrastro—the stepfather
el criminal—the criminal
la maleta—the suitcase
la navaja—the knife
la botella—the bottle
la marijuana—the marijuana
el tequila—the tequila
el lado—the side
la milla—the mile
el desierto—the desert
la última vez—the last time
la primera vez—the first time
el mes pasado—last month
hace—ago
ayer—yesterday
ayer por la mañana—yesterday morning

### EXERCISE

1. Anita did not come from Mexico with her stepfather.
2. Simon did not bring me my suitcase.
3. When did you and your brother cross to this side?
4. She said she did not tell the officer the truth.
5. How many years did your parents live in Sonora?
6. I couldn't do the work yesterday morning.
7. We didn't see the criminal.
8. Did he leave his passport with you?
9. The woman sent seven dollars to her daughter last month.

10. The legal papers did not cost her much.
11. He let me go because I told him the truth.
12. They left here with my uncle five days ago.
13. Why did you leave your wife at that place?
14. I didn't believe what[1] he said.
15. Did you ask him for any money?
16. He wouldn't give me the knife when I asked him for it.
17. At what time did he find out?
18. When was the last time you saw this man?
19. When was the first time you smuggled aliens?
20. Did you buy the marijuana from those merchants?
21. I worked in that factory for a long time.
22. How many bottles of tequila did you bring from Mexico?
23. How many miles did you walk through the desert?
24. What did you do when you arrived in Chicago?
25. He told me that he saw Mr. Moreno yesterday.

---

[1] Whenever "what" is not used as an interrogative word, but rather has the meaning of "that which", it is rendered in Spanish by the construction **"lo que."**

## LESSON XIII

## USES OF "POR" AND "PARA"

The prepositions **"por"** and **"para"** are employed in senses that have so great an apparent resemblance and are so frequently translated alike in English that it is necessary to study their uses carefully in order to know which one to use in Spanish. These prepositions each have their definite uses and cannot be interchanged without altering the meaning of a sentence.

**"PARA"** is used:

To show destination, purpose, or use. (For, to)

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él sale para Nueva York.** | He is leaving for New York. |
| **¿Para dónde va Vd.?** | Where are you going? |
| **El libro es para Vd.** | The book is for you. |
| **Estudio para aprender.** | I study in order to learn. |
| **Él estudia para médico.** | He is studying to be a doctor. |
| **Ella tiene un vaso para vino.** | She has a wine glass. |
| **Tengo veinte dólares para ropa.** | I have twenty dollars for clothes. |

To express a point in future time. (For, by)

| | |
|---|---|
| **La lección para mañana es fácil.** | The lesson for tomorrow is easy. |
| **Él tiene una cita para el lunes.** | He has an appointment (date) for Monday. |
| **Tenga el carro listo para esta tarde.** | Have the car ready by this afternoon. |

Whenever a conjugated verb is followed by an infinitive, or when an infinitive is standing alone in an English sentence, Spanish sometimes requires insertion of the preposition **"para"**. This is rendered in English by "in order to;" so a good rule of thumb is that if a conjugated verb is followed by an infinitive, or an infinitive stands alone in English, test to see if insertion of "in order to" would make sense in the English sentence. If "in order to" makes sense, and if it expresses a purpose, **"para"** must be used before the infinitive in Spanish.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Fuí para ver a mi hermana.** | I went to see my sister. |
| **Lo traje para cambiarlo.** | I brought it to exchange it. |
| **No pude venir con él.** | I couldn't come with him.<br>("In order to" would not make sense here so no **"para"**.) |

**"POR" is used:**

To denote an agent (see passive voice).

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él fué arrestado por el oficial.** | He was arrested by the officer. |
| **El libro fué escrito por un extranjero.** | The book was written by a foreigner. |

To express source (by, through, for, or along).

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él entró por la puerta.** | He entered through the door. |
| **Él va por el médico.** | He is going for the doctor. |
| **Lo hice por Vd.** | I did it for you. (for your sake) |
| **Trabajé por mi hermano.** | I worked for my brother. (in his place) |

To show reason or motive for an action.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él fué arrestado por matar a un hombre.** | He was arrested for killing a man. |
| **Ella estuvo en la cárcel por robar.** | She was in jail for stealing. |

To express a unit of measure or number, and to express exchange.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Gano dos pesos por día.** | I earn two pesos a day. |
| **Cuestan quince centavos por libra.** | They cost fifteen cents per pound. |
| **Diez por ciento de los hombres fueron allá.** | Ten per cent of the men went there. |
| **Él pagó cinco dólares por el sombrero.** | He paid five dollars for the hat. |
| **Hemos dado el carro viejo por uno nuevo.** | We have given the old car for a new one. |

To express a period of time.

| | |
|---|---|
| **He trabajado aquí por dos meses.** | I have worked here for two months. |
| **Él ha vivido allí por mucho tiempo.** | He has lived there for a long time. |
| **Él estuvo aquí por cinco minutos.** | He was here for five minutes. |

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS WITH PREPOSITIONS

After a preposition, whenever an "ing" form of a verb is used in English, in Spanish, one must always use the full infinitive of the verb. Some of the more common prepositions that are followed by an infinitive in Spanish are:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Después de** | After |
| **Antes de** | Before |
| **Desde** | Since |
| **Sin** | Without |
| **Por** | Through, for |
| **Para** | For, in order to |
| **Al** | On, upon |
| **En vez de** | Instead of |

**Después de cruzar el río, fuimos a un rancho grande.**
After crossing the river, we went to a big ranch.

**Le escribimos una carta al gobernador antes de venir.**
We wrote a letter to the governor before coming.

**Él no ha visto a su amigo desde prestarle el dinero.**
He has not seen his friend since lending him the money.

**Él entró en los Estados Unidos sin obtener documentos.**
He entered the United States without obtaining documents.

**Le despidieron del trabajo por hablar tanto.**
They fired him from the job for talking so much.

**Este libro es para escribir los nombres de los contrabandistas.**
This book is for writing the names of the smugglers.

**Al salir del teatro, él fue arrestado.**
On leaving the theater, he was arrested.

**En vez de decir la verdad, él mintió más.**
Instead of telling the truth, he lied more.

The preposition "by" **(por)** when followed by an "ing" is generally best expressed by omitting the "by" and using only the present participle in Spanish.

**Él cruzó el río vadeando por los lugares bajos.**
He crossed the river by wading through the low places.

**Ella no ganó nada mintiendo.**
She didn't gain anything by lying.

When a preposition is followed by a verb that has to be conjugated, **"que"** must be placed in front of the subject or the conjugated verb.

**Después (de) que Antonio comió, salió para el centro.**
After Antonio ate, he left for town.

**Desde que (nosotros) llegamos, él no ha venido a esta casa.**
Since we arrived, he has not come to this house.

**Después (de) que María llegó, la señora nos dió las noticias.**
After Maria arrived, the lady gave us the news.

## VOCABULARY

**la garita**—sentry box (the entrance gate—Mexican border)
**el minero**—the miner
**la ofensa**—the offense
**el vaso**—the drinking glass
**la leche**—the milk
**la vaca**—cow
**el día de fiesta**—the holiday
**la plaza**—the square
**la montaña**—the mountain
**la carta**—the letter
**la mercancía**—merchandise
**el oeste**—west
**el hospital**—the hospital
**el centavo**—the cent
**el ejercicio**—the exercise
**la iglesia**—the church
**la plata**—the silver
**el pan**—the bread
**la máquina**—the machine
**el teléfono**—the telephone
**pequeño**—small
**solo**—alone
**hacia**—towards
**menos**—less
**el lunes por la mañana**—Monday morning
**quebrar**—to break
**parar**—to stop
**cambiar**—to change; exchange
**voltear**—to turn
**andar**—to walk
**estar listo**—to be ready

## EXERCISE

1. Why did the officers arrest you?
2. They arrested me for a very small offense.
3. Eliseo has an appointment for Monday morning.
4. I need a glass for milk.
5. He ran towards the west when I saw him.
6. She wants to go home for the holidays.
7. The alien did not enter through the entrance gate.
8. I paid the rancher $100 for the cow.
9. The miners went to the mountains to look for silver.
10. He sold each one for five cents.
11. Do these exercises by (for) tomorrow.
12. He earns very little money doing this kind of work.
13. After he left the hospital, he started to work.
14. I have not been able to find my family since I arrived here.
15. That lawyer can do a lot for you.
16. What is this machine for? It is for writing letters.
17. Upon arriving at the office, I called him by telephone.
18. Marta cannot go to the store without telling me.
19. You cannot walk through the park alone.
20. Instead of telling us the truth, she lied.
21. The officer stopped him because he started to run.
22. After exchanging his merchandise for money, he went to town.
23. He and his two friends always travel together.
24. Turn to the right where you see the church.
25. He broke the bottle without knowing it.

## LESSON XIV

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE TENSE

In Spanish there are two past indicative tenses; the preterite indicative and the imperfect indicative. They are not used interchangeably. The latter is an added tense not found in English grammar. In Spanish it is called the co-preterite. To conjugate verbs in the imperfect indicative tense, the following endings are attached to the stem of the verb:

For "ar" verbs, add: **aba, abas, aba, ábamos, aban**
For "er" verbs, add: **ía, ías, ía, íamos, ían**
For "ir" verbs, add: **ía, ías, ía, íamos, ían**

| ***Comprar**—to buy* | ***Vender**—to sell* | ***Venir**—to come* |
|---|---|---|
| **compraba** | **vendía** | **venía** |
| **comprabas** | **vendías** | **venías** |
| **compraba** | **vendía** | **venía** |
| **comprábamos** | **vendíamos** | **veníamos** |
| **compraban** | **vendían** | **venían** |

There are only three verbs that are irregular in the imperfect indicative tense.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ser—to be | **era, eras, era, éramos, eran** |
| Ver—to see | **veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veían** |
| Ir—to go | **iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, iban** |

The imperfect indicative tense is used:

To express customary or habitual past action. This corresponds to the English "used" followed by an infinitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo comía allí cada día.** | I used to eat there every day. |
| **Él ganaba mucho dinero en México.** | He used to earn a lot of money in Mexico. |

To express an interrupted past action. In this case the interrupted action, that which was going on, is placed in the imperfect indicative, and the interrupting action, that which did the interrupting, is put in the preterite indicative. The imperfect action is generally expressed by the progressive imperfect (imperfect of **"estar"** plus the present particple of the main verb).

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo estaba estudiando cuando Carlos entró.** | I was studying when Carlos entered. |
| **Yo manejaba el yip cuando vimos a los extranjeros.** | I was driving the jeep when we saw the aliens. |

To express two or more actions going along together. All of these actions will be put in the imperfect and either the simple imperfect or the progressive imperfect may be used. (Notice that the translation in these cases is "was" or "were" plus the present particple in English.)

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo estaba trabajando (trabajaba), y ella estaba leyendo (leía).** | **I was working, and she was reading.** |
| **Enrique estaba jugando (jugaba) con su hijo y su esposa estaba preparando (preparaba) la comida.** | **Enrique was playing with his son, and his wife was preparing dinner.** |

### PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The imperfect tense of the verb **"estar"** is used before the present participle of a verb to show progressive action in past times. This action may also be expressed by the imperfect tense of the main verb.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ella estaba trabajando allí.** | She was working there. |
| **Juan estaba viviendo solo.** | Juan was living alone. |

### AVOID USING "IR," "VENIR," "SALIR," AND OTHER VERBS OF MOTION IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES.

The verbs **"ir,"** **"andar,"** and **"seguir"** are also used with the present participle to express an even stronger progressive meaning. Of the three verbs, **"ir"** and **"andar"** are more commonly used.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Lo arrestaron porque andaba tomando.** | They arrested him because he was drinking. |
| **Ellos iban caminando por el camino.** | They were walking along the road. |
| **Ella seguía cantando.** | She kept on singing. |

### REQUIREMENT OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

The imperfect tense expresses an action of indefinitely prolonged duration: Whatever the person was doing, used to do, or customarily did are the usual translations. Use the imperfect indicative tense to state whatever the person or persons (1) was or were, (2) had (possession), (3) knew, (4) wanted, (5) intended, (6) needed, or (7) owed.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él no tenía dinero.** | **He didn't have any money.** |
| **No sabíamos eso.** | **We didn't know that.** |
| **No queríamos ir porque no teníamos dinero.** | **We didn't want to go because we didn't have any money.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuándo pensaba Vd. cruzar?** | When did you intend to cross? |
| **Yo sabía que él era mexicano.** | I knew that he was a Mexican. |
| **Él no me necesitaba.** | He did not need me. |

The imperfect is a very important tense with governing verbs. Adhering to the special uses of the imperfect tense note that some of the governing verbs are usually used in the imperfect: **"Ir a," "querer," "pensar," "saber," "acabar de,"** and **"tratar de."**

### PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT) INDICATIVE TENSE

The pluperfect (by some grammarians called the past perfect) is formed by placing the imperfect tense of the auxiliary verb **"haber"** before the past participle of the main verb.

**Yo había comido**—I had eaten
**Tú habías comido**—You had eaten
**Él había comido**—He had eaten
**Nosotros habíamos comido**—We had eaten
**Ellos habían comido**—They had eaten

### IDIOMATIC USE OF "HABÍA"

The third person singular of the imperfect indicative of the verb **"haber"** is used idiomatically meaning "there was" or "there were" or "was there?", "were there?".

| | |
|---|---|
| **Había mucho algodón en el campo.** | There was a lot of cotton in the field. |
| **¿Había mucha gente trabajando allí?** | Were there many people working there? |

### VOCABULARY

**el estudiante**—the student
**el alumno**—the student
**el marido**—the husband
**el bracero**—day laborer (the contract laborer—Mexican border)
**la sala de clase**—the classroom
**el algodon**—the cotton
**el troque** (slang)—the truck
**la troca** (slang)—the truck, pick-up
**otro**—another, other
**estar enfermo**—to be sick
**pizcar**—to pick (cotton, etc.)
**localizar**—to locate

### EXERCISE

1. I had already bought the house when they arrived.
2. There was much (a lot of) cotton in the fields.
3. Had he gone to the office when you went to see him?

4. She did not come for the money because she had received a check.
5. You told me that you had worked for him before.
6. Did you know that the man was a smuggler?
7. Were there any contract laborers picking cotton?
8. I used to work for Mr. Kent, but now I am working on a big ranch.
9. What kind of work were you doing before coming to the United States?
10. You said that you had asked the inspector for a permit to visit the United States.
11. He said that he wanted to come to San Antonio to work.
12. When I was working on that ranch, Enrique was there also.
13. Her husband had been working in Cotulla for many years.
14. They were walking along the road when I arrested them.
15. Who was driving the truck when you (pl) were going to California?
16. They intended to come to the United States, but couldn't because they didn't have any money.
17. Had you seen this man before?
18. I was very sick yesterday.
19. There were many people without work when I left Mexico.
20. He told the inspector that he had entered legally.
21. The student was doing the lesson when I entered the classroom.
22. His uncle needed other papers to take out a passport.
23. Did you know how to locate this man's house?
24. Did you know Elias when you were working there?
25. I was taking the marijuana to a man who was going to pay me a lot of money.

## Lesson XV

## NUMBERS

### CARDINAL NUMBERS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cero | 0 | ochenta | 80 |
| uno, a | 1 | ochenta y ocho | 88 |
| dos | 2 | noventa | 90 |
| tres | 3 | noventa y nueve | 99 |
| cuatro | 4 | ciento (cien) | 100 |
| cinco | 5 | ciento uno | 101 |
| seis | 6 | doscientos, as | 200 |
| siete | 7 | doscientos dos | 202 |
| ocho | 8 | trescientos, as | 300 |
| nueve | 9 | trescientos tres | 303 |
| diez | 10 | cuatrocientos, as | 400 |
| once | 11 | cuatrocientos cuatro | 404 |
| doce | 12 | quinientos, as | 500 |
| trece | 13 | quinientos cinco | 505 |
| catorce | 14 | seiscientos, as | 600 |
| quince | 15 | seiscientos seis | 606 |
| diez y seis | 16 | setecientos, as | 700 |
| diez y siete | 17 | setecientos siete | 707 |
| diez y ocho | 18 | ochocientos, as | 800 |
| diez y nueve | 19 | ochocientos ocho | 808 |
| veinte | 20 | novecientos, as | 900 |
| veinte y uno | 21 | novecientos nueve | 909 |
| veinte y dos | 22 | mil | 1,000 |
| treinta | 30 | mil novecientos diez | 1,910 |
| treinta y tres | 33 | mil novecientos sesenta y seis | 1,966 |
| cuarenta | 40 | dos mil | 2,000 |
| cuarenta y cuatro | 44 | dos mil doscientos doce | 2,212 |
| cincuenta | 50 | seis mil | 6,000 |
| cincuenta y cinco | 55 | seis mil diez y seis | 6,016 |
| sesenta | 60 | ocho mil | 8,000 |
| sesenta y seis | 66 | ocho mil ciento ochenta y ocho | 8,188 |
| setenta | 70 | un millón | 1,000,000 |
| setenta y siete | 77 | un millón cien mil cien | 1,100,100 |

The cardinal numbers, except **"uno"** and **"ciento,"** are invariable. These two numbers agree with the noun that they modify in gender and number. **"Ciento"** used alone before a masculine or feminine noun drops the final syllable "to" and becomes **"cien."** **"Uno"** drops the "o" when used before a masculine noun and changes the "o" to "a" before a feminine noun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **cien hombres** | one hundred men |
| **cien mujeres** | one hundred women |
| **treinta y un libros** | thirty-one books |
| **doscientas una libras** | two hundred one pounds |

**"Uno"** is not used before **"ciento"** or **"mil."**

| | |
|---|---|
| **mil ochocientos** | 1,800 |
| **ciento cinco** | 105 |

In English we may say "one hundred one" or "one hundred and one," "two hundred seventeen" or "two hundred and seventeen." In Spanish the conjunction is not used between hundred (thousands, millions) and the next numeral in a series.

| | |
|---|---|
| **ciento quince** | 115 |
| **setecientos diez y ocho** | 718 |
| **doscientos cuarenta** | 240 |

Counting above one thousand is not done by hundreds as is sometimes done in English.

| | |
|---|---|
| **mil ochocientos treinta** | 1830 (eighteen-thirty) |
| **mil quinientos catorce** | 1514 (fifteen-fourteen) |

In Spanish the word **"millón"** is a noun and is followed by the preposition **"de"** before the object enumerated.

| | |
|---|---|
| **un millón de pesos** | one million pesos |
| **dos millones de libros** | two million books |

### ORDINAL NUMBERS

| | |
|---|---|
| **primero**—first | **sexto**—sixth |
| **segundo**—second | **séptimo**—seventh |
| **tercero**—third | **octavo**—eighth |
| **cuarto**—fourth | **noveno**—ninth |
| **quinto**—fifth | **décimo**—tenth |

The ordinal numbers agree with the word they modify in number and gender. They are seldom used above ten. **"Primero"** and **"tercero"** *drop the "o" when used before a masculine singular* noun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **el primer piso** | the first floor |
| **los primeros días** | the first days |
| **el segundo hombre** | the second man |
| **la segunda mujer** | the second woman |
| **el tercer libro** | the third book |
| **las terceras copias** | the third copies |

The cardinal numbers are used with the days of the month except with the first day of the month.

| | |
|---|---|
| **El sábado es el primero de mayo.** | Saturday is the first of May. |
| **Nací el tres de mayo.** | I was born the third of May. |
| **El cinco de mayo es día de fiesta en México.** | The fifth of May is a holiday in Mexico. |

## TIME EXPRESSIONS

The verb **"ser"** is always used in telling time. The verb agrees with the hour in number and person. The words **"hora"** (o'clock) and **"minutos"** (minutes) are understood. The number expressing the hour is preceded by the definite article, which agrees with the word **"hora"** (understood in Spanish) in number and gender. **"Media"** (half) is an adjective and **"cuarto"** (quarter) is a noun. From one o'clock to one fifty-nine the verb **"ser"** and article **"la"** will be singular. From two o'clock to twelve fifty nine the verb **"ser"** and the article **"la"** will be plural. To express fractional time, the hour and the number of minutes past the hour are joined by the conjunction **"y."** In spoken Spanish the conjunction **"y"** is sometimes omitted.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Qué hora es?** | **What time is it?** |
| **Es la una.** | **It is 1:00 o'clock.** |
| **Es la una y cinco.** | **It is 1:05 o'clock.** |
| **Es la una quince.** | **It is 1:15 o'clock.** |
| **Es la una y media.** | **It is 1:30 o'clock.** |
| **Es la una treinta y cinco.** | **It is 1:35 o'clock.** |
| **Son las dos.** | **It is 2:00 o'clock.** |
| **Son las tres y cuarto.** | **It is 3:15 o'clock.** |
| **Son las siete y media.** | **It is 7:30 o'clock.** |
| **Son las doce diez y siete.** | **It is 12:17 o'clock.** |

In the spoken language, minutes beyond the half hour are often expressed by subtracting them from the following hour by use of the word **"menos"** (less, minus) or **"falta" "faltan"** (lacking). To express A.M., add **"de la mañana"** to the time expression. To express P.M., add **"de la tarde"** or **"de la noche,"** as appropriate, to the time expression. There are several ways of telling time. The beginner will do well to use one until completely familiar with it before attempting others.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Son las doce menos cinco.** | **It is 11:55 o'clock.** |
| **Faltan cinco para las doce.** | **It is 11:55 o'clock.** |
| **Falta un cuarto para las dos.** | **It is 1:45 o'clock.** |
| **Falta un minuto para la una.** | **It is 12:59 o'clock.** |
| **Es mediodía.** | **It is noon.** |
| **Son las doce del día.** | **It is 12:00 o'clock noon.** |
| **Es medianoche.** | **It is midnight.** |
| **Son las doce de la noche.** | **It is 12:00 o'clock midnight.** |
| **Son las cuatro en punto.** | **It is 4:00 o'clock sharp.** |
| **Son las tres de la mañana.** | **It is 3:00 A.M.** |
| **Es la una y media de la tarde.** | **It is 1:30 P.M.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Son las nueve veinte y cinco de la noche.** | It is 9:25 P.M. |
| **A las ocho y media de la noche.** | At 8:30 P.M. |
| **A la una cuarenta y cinco de la mañana.** | At 1:45 A.M. |

## CALENDAR DIVISIONS

*Months of the Year*

| | |
|---|---|
| **enero** | January |
| **febrero** | February |
| **marzo** | March |
| **abril** | April |
| **mayo** | May |
| **junio** | June |
| **julio** | July |
| **agosto** | August |
| **septiembre** | September |
| **octubre** | October |
| **noviembre** | November |
| **diciembre** | December |

*Days of the Week*

| | |
|---|---|
| **el domingo** | Sunday |
| **el lunes** | Monday |
| **el martes** | Tuesday |
| **el miércoles** | Wednesday |
| **el jueves** | Thursday |
| **el viernes** | Friday |
| **el sábado** | Saturday |

*Seasons of the Year*

| | |
|---|---|
| **la primavera** | spring |
| **el verano** | summer |
| **el otoño** | autumn |
| **el invierno** | winter |

The months of the year, days of the week, and the seasons of the year are not capitalized in Spanish.

There are several ways of asking the date, month, or day of the month; however, the following expressions are most commonly used:

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿Cuál es la fecha (de hoy)?** | What is the date? |
| **¿A qué fecha estamos?** | What is the date? |
| **¿A qué mes estamos?** | What month is this? |
| **¿A qué día del mes estamos?** | What day of the month is it? |
| **¿Qué día del mes es hoy?** | What day of the month is it? |
| **¿A cuántos estamos?** | What day of the month is it? |

To answer, use the following pattern:

**el** (day) **de** (month) **de** (year)

| | |
|---|---|
| **el diez y seis de septiembre de mil ochocientos diez** | Sept. 16, 1810 |
| **el cuatro de julio de mil setecientos setenta y seis** | July 4, 1776 |
| **el doce de febrero de mil ochocientos nueve** | Feb. 12, 1809 |
| **el once de noviembre de mil novecientos diez y nueve** | Nov. 11, 1919 |
| **el doce de octubre de mil novecientos cuarenta y cinco** | Oct. 12, 1945 |

The articles **"el"** or **"los"** are used with the days of the week, except when the days of the week are preceded by the adjectives **"cada," "muchos," "pocos,"** by any number, or by the verb **"ser"**.

The preposition "on" is not stated in Spanish before days of the week or dates.

"At" is translated as "a" when used with time.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tengo una cita el sábado a las seis.** | I have a date Saturday at six. |
| **Hoy es domingo; mañana es lunes.** | Today is Sunday; tomorrow is Monday. |
| **Esté aquí a las tres en punto.** | Be here at three o'clock sharp. |
| **Salimos para Juárez a las cinco de la mañana.** | We are leaving for Juarez at five in the morning. |
| **Vamos al cine cada sábado.** | We go to the movies every Saturday. |
| **Él trabajó muchos domingos el año pasado.** | He worked many Sundays last year. |
| **No trabajamos los lunes.** | We don't work on Mondays. |
| **Hay cinco domingos en este mes.** | There are five Sundays in this month. |

## VOCABULARY

**los niños**—the children
**el cuerpo**—the body
**el verano**—the summer
**la sandía**—the watermelon
**vámonos**—let's go
**durante**—during
**quincena**—fortnight
**a mediodía**—at noon
**nacer**—to be born
**enterrar**—to bury
**sepultar**—to bury
**ir de compras**—to go shopping
**decidir**—to decide
**conocer**—to meet, to become acquainted, to know

## EXERCISE

1. Where did you bury the body?
2. Micaela was born February 13, 1930.
3. Yesterday was Saturday; today is Sunday.
4. We sold the last watermelon at 10:20 P.M.
5. I go shopping every Friday.
6. Our parents arrived at 4:40 P.M. Friday.
7. She decided to take the train Tuesday at 8:55 A.M.
8. The foreman paid us at 6:30 A.M. yesterday.
9. During the summer we leave for Michigan.
10. Did you see anyone last night at 11:30?
11. What do you do on Sundays?
12. We do not have to be here until 12:30 P.M.
13. I met him day before yesterday at noon.
14. The last time I went there was on Monday, May 27, 1943.
15. Let's go, because it is already very late.
16. The inspectors are going to deport him tomorrow morning.

17. Concha is 31 years old, but she still lives with her parents.
18. Felipe says that they pay him every fortnight.
19. He owes me about $351.00 dollars for seven months of work.
20. Today is a holiday, and we do not have to work.
21. He wants to see us at the bridge tonight at 10:45.
22. At what time does your cousin arrive here?
23. I lost the first passport that I took out.
24. It is 12:00 noon, November 30, 1966.
25. One hundred children were sick yesterday.

## Lesson XVI

## PASSIVE VOICE

In Spanish, as in English, there are two voices: active and passive. The subject of an active voice acts:

| | |
|---|---|
| **El muchacho tira la pelota.** | The boy throws the ball. |

The subject of a passive verb receives the action. It does not do anything.

| | |
|---|---|
| **La pelota fué tirada por el muchacho.** | The ball was thrown by the boy. |

The passive voice is formed in Spanish by some form of the verb **"ser"** plus the past particple of the main verb. The past participle must agree with the subject in number and gender. The agent (by whom the action is done) will always be introduced by the preposition **"por."**

| | |
|---|---|
| **El contrabandista fué arrestado por el oficial.** | The smuggler was arrested by the officer. |
| **María fué deportada por el servicio de inmigración.** | Maria was deported by the Immigration Service. |

The true passive voice is most often used (1) when the "agent" is expressed or (2) when the subject is a person; otherwise, the passive voice is generally avoided in Spanish by making it active.

| | |
|---|---|
| **El oficial arrestó al contrabandista.** | The smuggler was arrested by the officer. **or** The officer arrested the smuggler. |
| **El servicio de inmigración deportó a María.** | Maria was deported by the Immigration Service. **or** The Immigration Service deported Maria. |

When no interest is shown in the performer of the action, the true passive voice is replaced in Spanish by the reflexive **"se"**. This construction is explained in depth in Lesson XVIII.

A third substitute for the passive voice is the impersonal use of the third person plural of the active voice, especially if the passive subject is a living thing. This construction lays more stress on the action than does the more definite construction with the reflexive. It is especially used when the passive subject is a pronoun.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Lo detuvieron ayer.** | He was detained yesterday. |
| **Nos invitaron anoche.** | We were invited last night. |
| **Cerraron la tienda.** | The store was closed (by someone). |

"Ser" plus the past participle is used only for a happening or action, never for description. The latter is an apparent passive, and it indicates the state or condition of the subject as the result of the action. The apparent passive is formed by the auxiliary verb "estar" with a past participle that agrees in number and gender with the subject expressed or understood.

| | |
|---|---|
| **La puerta estaba abierta.** | The door was open. |
| **El carro estaba abandonado.** | The car was abandoned. |
| **La casa está destruida.** | The house is destroyed. |

**NOTICE:** The imperfect is more frequent in resultant conditions (description), while the preterite is more frequent in the passive and its equivalents.

The following summary may be helpful in determining the more usual Spanish equivalents of the English passive.

Resultant Condition: No action = **"estar"** plus past participle.

True Passive: Action performed with the agent expressed = **"ser"** plus past participle.

Impersonal Passive: Action performed but agent unnamed =
(1) reflexive construction, especially in general statements of fact and if the subject is a thing;
(2) third person plural active voice, especially if the action is stressed, and the passive subject is a living thing.

### VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **la revista—the magazine** | **el extranjero—foreigner** |
| **la frontera—the border** | **cerca (de)—close (to), near** |
| **la estación de—the . . . station** | **despues (de)—after** |
| **el viento—the wind** | **cerrar—to shut, close** |
| **el país—the country** | **echar—to throw out or into[1]** |
| **los muebles—the furniture** | **terminar—to finish** |
| **el edificio—the building** | **acabar—to finish** |
| **extranjero—foreign** | |

---

[1] Also used to express voluntary return to Mexico granted illegal aliens by the Immigration and Naturalization Service.

### EXERCISE NO. 1

1. He was arrested by the police in 1947.
2. Why was he left in the detention camp?
3. They have been seen close to the border.
4. We have been living in that place for a long time.
5. This house was sold last week.
6. It was sent from here on the fifteenth of May.
7. The train station was open when I left.
8. All the doors were shut by the high winds.
9. Their new furniture had been taken out of the room.
10. At what time does the bank close?
11. When they arrived, the doors and windows were shut.
12. He was tired because he had worked all night.
13. Horacio was sent to the market **(por)** bread.
14. Do you know why they were not going to be returned voluntarily **(echar)** to Mexico?
15. These buildings were finished last year.

## IDIOMATIC USES OF SOME VERBS

There are some verbs in the Spanish language which have either a different construction or a variety of meanings and thus warrant special attention. Following are a few of these verbs.

### "HACER"

The impersonal form of the verb **"hacer"** has two important uses: to deal with time and to express the state of the weather. In either case, only the third person singular, the infinitive, present participle, and the past participle are used. The object of **"hacer"** is either a measure of time or a noun expressing the state of the weather, and in either case to be rendered in English by the verb "to be" used impersonally or, in the case of time, by "ago."

The idiomatic use of **"hacer"** is the only possible translation for the word "ago." Whereas in English the construction is: length of time plus "ago;" the Spanish construction is some form of **"hacer"** plus the time measure.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él llegó hace cinco minutos.** | He arrived five minutes ago. |
| **Lo ví hace seis años.** | I saw him six years ago. |
| **Ella murió hace cinco días.** | She died five days ago. |

When the clause containing **"hacer"** stands first and is followed by a clause containing a verb, the latter is connected with

**"hacer"** by the conjunction **"que"** in which case "ago" would be equivalent and interchangeable with "since."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hace cinco minutos que él llegó.** | It is five minutes since he arrived. or He arrived five minutes ago. |
| **Hace cinco días que ella murió.** | It is five days since she died. or She died five days ago. |

When the clause following **"hacer"** is expressed by a noun, it is introduced by the preposition **"desde,"** meaning "since."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hace muchos siglos desde el diluvio.** | It is many centuries since the flood. |
| **Mañana va a ser un mes desde el último día de pago.** | Tomorrow is going to be one month since last pay day. |

Besides rendering the idea of "ago" or "since," **"hacer"** expresses the length of time between two points. The initial point is always past; the terminal point may be past, present or future. **"Hacer"** corresponds to the terminal point, and is past, present or future accordingly. English uses the perfect "have been," "had been," or "will have been" plus the preposition "for" followed by the length of time to express this idea. In Spanish the length of time will follow **"hacer"** and the perfect tense will be rendered by its corresponding simple tense.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hace dos años que estudio español.** | I have studied Spanish for two years. **or** I have been studying Spanish for two years. |
| **Hace dos meses que vivo aquí.** | I have lived here for two months. **or** I have been living here for two months. |
| **Hacía tres meses que vivía allí.** | I had been living there for three months. |
| **Hacía dos años que estudiaba inglés.** | I had been studying English for two years. |

All the preceding English sentences may be rendered in Spanish by a word by word translation, but the **"hace"** construction is preferable.

| | |
|---|---|
| **He estudiado español por dos años. or He estado estudiando español por dos años.** | I have studied Spanish for two years. **or** I have been studying Spanish for two years. |
| **He vivido aquí por dos meses. or He estado viviendo aquí por dos meses.** | I have lived here for two months. **or** I have been living here for two months. |
| **Había estado viviendo allí por tres meses.** | I had been living there for three months. |
| **Había estado estudiando inglés por dos años.** | I had been studying English for two years. |

### "HACER" APPLIED TO WEATHER

In speaking of the state of the weather, **"hacer"** takes as its object a noun expressing the phrase desired:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hace mucho sol.** | It is very sunny. |
| **Ayer hacía mal tiempo.** | Yesterday the weather was bad. |
| **¿Qué tiempo hacía ayer?** | What kind of weather was it yesterday? |

In expressing temperature, the Spanish verb corresponding to the English "to be" varies according to what is its subject. In speaking of weather, the verb is **"hacer"**; of a person, or anything animate, **"tener"**; and of a thing, **"ser"** or **"estar"** according to whether the quality is inherent or accidental:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hace mucho color.** | It is very hot. |
| **Yo tengo mucho frío.** | I am very cold. |
| **El hielo es muy frío.** | Ice is very cold. |
| **El agua está muy fría.** | The water is very cold. |

### "HACER" PLUS INFINITIVE

**"Hacer"** may be used as a verb of causing when it is followed by an infinitive, and, as such, it renders the English meaning of "to make someone (to) do something or to cause something to be done."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Le hice contestar las preguntas.** | I made him answer the questions. |
| **Hicieron marchar el carro.** | They started the car. |
| **El oficial lo hizo bajarse del carro.** | The officer made him get out of the car. |

## VERBS OF PERCEPTION

In English, when the verbs "to see" or "to hear" are followed by the action seen or heard, the present participle is usually employed. In Spanish, however, these two verbs of perception are more commonly followed by the infinitive form of the action "seen" or "heard." The best construction is to place the infinitive immediately after the verb of perception.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Vimos correr a los extranjeros.** | We saw the aliens running. |
| **Ella oyó llegar a los oficiales.** | She heard the officers arriving. |

When English uses an infinitive form following the verbs of perception, the infinitive is still used in Spanish.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Vimos correr a los extranjeros.** | We saw the aliens run. |
| **María oyó entrar al ladrón.** | Maria heard the burglar enter. |

## "GUSTAR" AND "FALTAR"

**"Gustar,"** to please or give pleasure, is employed in connections where the English uses "like," for which there is no exact equivalent in Spanish. In order to use **"gustar"** for "to like," the English construction is reversed so that the English object becomes the Spanish subject and the English subject becomes the Spanish indirect object. The simplest way to view this is to think of "to like" as "to be pleasing."

I like those houses.
Those houses are pleasing to me.
**Me gustan esas casas.**

He likes Texas.
Texas is pleasing to him.
**Le gusta Texas.**

Notice that only the third person singular or plural is used to agree with the subject, and that the Spanish word order is similar to the English even though the function of the words has been reversed.

Since the English object becomes the Spanish subject, it is generally necessary to insert an article.[1] Since the English subject becomes the Spanish indirect object, it must be accompanied by its corresponding indirect object pronoun and be introduced by the personal *a* if it is a noun.

Juan likes school.
School is pleasing to Juan.
**A Juan le gusta la escuela.**

Marta doesn't like those dresses.
Those dresses are not pleasing to Marta.
**A Marta no le gustan esos vestidos.**

---

[1] A common noun which is the subject of a sentence is usually preceded by its corresponding article.

**"Gustar"** is also used when "to like" in English is expressing fondness for a certain action:

We like to study.
To study is pleasing to us.
**Nos gusta estudiar.**

Under this situation, Spanish always uses the infinitive as the subject of the sentence, and the verb is always in the third person singular form.

**"Gustar"** is not generally applied to liking people. The closest idioms that can be used to express the idea of liking someone are **"caer bien"** for the affirmative, and **"caer mal"** for the negative. The same reversal of object and subject occurs with these idioms.

I like that man. (personality-wise)
That man is pleasing to me.
**Ese hombre me cae bien. or Me cae bien ese hombre.**

We don't like those students.
Those students are not pleasing to us.
**Nos caen mal esos estudiantes. or Esos estudiantes nos caen mal.**

**"Faltar,"** to lack or to need, is like **"gustar"** in all respects. Although its mastery is not as important as that of the verb **"gustar,"** since for all practical purposes **"faltar"** can be replaced by **"necesitar,"** at least a passing knowledge of its use should be helpful in understanding it when it is used by others.

He lacks five dollars to buy a ticket.
Five dollars to buy a ticket is lacking to him.
**Le faltan cinco dólares para comprar un boleto.**

They still need to go to the drugstore.
To go to the drugstore is still lacking to them.
**Todavía les falta ir a la botica (farmacia).**

## VOCABULARY

**el buque**—the boat
**el taller**—the shop
**el día de pago**—payday
**la cueva**—the cave
**la droga**—the drug
**el refugiado**—the refugee
**la compañía**—the company
**la película**—the movie, film
**el restaurante**—the restaurant
**abandonado**—abandoned
**el curso**—the course
**fichera** (slang)—bar maid

**desde**—since
**¿qué tal?**—how are you?
**hacer viento**—to be windy
**ir de pesca**—to go fishing
**ir a la pesca**—to go fishing
**hacer sol**—to be sunny
**cancelar**—to cancel; void
**encontrar**—to find
**rendir**—to give up; to surrender
**regresar**—to go back
**pedir**—to order (food or supplies)

## EXERCISE NO. 2

1. It was very windy when the boat entered the port.
2. We like to go fishing when it is sunny.
3. His passport was voided three weeks ago.
4. She was found in an abandoned house about five hours ago.
5. I have not seen him for five years.
6. Mario had worked in that shop for eight or nine months.
7. Seven days have gone by since my last payday.
8. The cave was very cold and wet.
9. We made him give us the drugs he was smuggling.
10. They can make us give up our local cards.
11. Did you (pl) see the smuggler talking to them?
12. We saw him drinking beer with that woman.
13. The "B" girl could not hear her boss coming.
14. Those refugees do not like to work in the fields.
15. She did not like the United States, so she went back to her country.
16. I have never liked his company.
17. How did you like the movie?
18. Eloisa likes to eat in that restaurant.
19. She always likes to order the same thing.
20. He lacks nine days finishing this course.

## LESSON XVII

## FUTURE INDICATIVE TENSE

The future indicative tense of regular verbs is formed by adding the following endings to the whole infinitive for all three conjugations:

**é, ás, á, emos, án**

| ***Hablar**—to speak* | ***Comer**—to eat* |
|---|---|
| **hablaré**—I will or shall speak | **comeré**—I will or shall eat |
| **hablarás**—You will or shall speak | **comerás**—You will or shall eat |
| **hablará**—He will or shall speak | **comerá**—He will or shall eat |
| **hablaremos**—We will or shall speak | **comeremos**—We will or shall eat |
| **hablarán**—They will or shall speak | **comerán**—They will or shall eat |

***Vivir**—to live*

**viviré**—I will or shall live
**vivirás**—You will or shall live
**vivirá**—He will or shall live
**viviremos**—We will or shall live
**vivirán**—They will or shall live

### IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FUTURE INDICATIVE TENSE

The twelve verbs listed below are the basic irregular verbs of the future indicative tense. In five the vowel of the infinitive endings is deleted **(caber, haber, poder, querer, saber)**, and in five the vowel of the infinitive endings is changed to "d" before attaching the regular endings **(poner = podr, salir = saldr, tener = tendr, valer = valdr, venir = vendr)**. In two, **"decir"** and **"hacer,"** the letters "ec" and "ce," respectively, are deleted from the infinitive.

**Caber—cabré, cabrás, cabrá, cabremos, cabrán**
**Haber—habré, habrás, habrá, habremos, habrán**
**Poder—podré, podrás, podrá, podremos, podrán**
**Querer—querré, querrás, querrá, querremos, querrán**
**Saber—sabré, sabrás, sabrá, sabremos, sabrán**
**Poner—pondré, pondrás, pondrá, pondremos, pondrán**
**Salir—saldré, saldrás, saldrá, saldremos, saldrán**
**Tener—tendré, tendrás, tendrá, tendremos, tendrán**
**Valer—valdré, valdrás, valdrá, valdremos, valdrán**
**Venir—vendré, vendrás, vendrá, vendremos, vendrán**
**Decir—diré, dirás, dirá, diremos, dirán**
**Hacer—haré, harás, hará, haremos, harán**

In addition to its regular use to express future time, the future tense may be used instead of the present indicative to express probability or conjecture.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Juan no está aquí; estará malo.** | **Juan is not here; he is probably sick.** |
| **Él gasta mucho dinero; será rico.** | **He spends a lot of money; he must be rich.** |

"**Habrá**" is used impersonally meaning "there will be" or "there shall be."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Creo que habrá mucha gente aquí mañana.** | **I think there will be many people here tomorrow.** |

The present indicative tense of the verb "ir" + "a" preceding an infinitive is frequently used in Spanish to replace the future tense.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Voy a comer a las doce.** | **I am going to eat at twelve.** |
| **Comeré a las doce.** | **I shall eat at twelve.** |
| **Voy a estudiar esta noche.** | **I am going to study tonight.** |
| **Estudiaré esta noche.** | **I shall study tonight.** |

By comparing the preceding examples, it is readily seen that the English and Spanish usage for the future and the verb "to go" in the present indicative plus an infinitive express about the same idea.

### VOCABULARY

**el inspector**—the inspector
**el jornalero**—the laborer
**el correo**—the post office
**la estafeta**—the post office
**el permiso**—the permit
**la ventana**—the window
**la hora**—the hour
**la cosecha**—the harvest
**el campo**—the field
**la labor**—the field
**el maíz**—the corn
**la madrugada**—the wee hours of the morning, dawn
**antes**—before
**entonces**—then
**pasado mañana**—day after tomorrow
**mañana por la tarde**—tomorrow afternoon
**a la noche**—tonight
**probablemente**—probably
**como a**—at about
**¿a qué hora?**—at what time?
**brincar**—to jump

### EXERCISE NO. 1

1. Tomorrow morning I shall go to the post office.
2. When will you go to town?
3. I am going to see Luis tomorrow morning.
4. Tomorrow is a holiday, and all the stores will be closed.

5. Ricardo will leave here day after tomorrow.
6. You will have to come back as soon as possible.
7. At what time will they open the window?
8. He will be here at about nine o'clock.
9. Will you be home tonight at six?
10. No, I have to go to church at that hour, but I will be there at eight.
11. If you see the inspector, tell him that I will come[1] to his house tonight.
12. The man tells me that he will have some information about some aliens.
13. He will know that we are lying to him.
14. An American tells the aliens that there will be a good harvest this year.
15. Will there be a lot of cotton in the fields this year?
16. He will have to sell the corn as soon as possible.
17. Maria will tell me the truth because I am going to help her get a passport.
18. They plan to see the foreman tomorrow afternoon.
19. Why will they jump at that place?
20. His friends will try to enter in the wee hours of the morning.

### CONDITIONAL TENSE

The conditional indicative tense (generally translated by "would"[2]) is formed by adding the following endings to the whole infinitive for all three conjugations:

**ía, ías, ía, íamos, ían**

| ***Dar*—*to give*** | ***Ver*—*to see*** | ***Ir*—*to go*** |
|---|---|---|
| **daría**—I would give | **vería**—I would see | **iría**—I would go |
| **darías**—You would give | **verías**—You would see | **irías**—You would go |
| **daría**—He would give | **vería**—He would see | **iría**—He would go |
| **daríamos**—We would give | **veríamos**—We would see | **iríamos**—We would go |
| **darían**—They would give | **verían**—They would see | **irían**—They would go |

### CONDITIONAL TENSE—IRREGULAR VERBS

The same twelve verbs that are irregular in the future tense are also irregular in the conditional indicative tense. The irregular stem for the future tense is the same stem used for the conditional tense. The endings are the same as for the regular verbs in the conditional tense.

---

[1] The native speaker will generally say "I will go to his house."

[2] Remember that when "would not" expresses a refusal, it is still translated by the preterite tense of "**querer.**"

**Caber—cabría, cabrías, cabría, cabríamos, cabrían**
**Haber—habría, habrías, habría, habríamos, habrían**
**Poder—podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podrían**
**Querer—querría, querrías, querría, querríamos, querrían**
**Saber—sabría, sabrías, sabría, sabríamos, sabrían**
**Poner—pondría, pondrías, pondría, pondríamos, pondrían**
**Salir—saldría, saldrías, saldría, saldríamos, saldrían**
**Tener—tendría, tendrías, tendría, tendríamos, tendrían**
**Valer—valdría, valdrías, valdría, valdríamos, valdrían**
**Venir—vendría, vendrías, vendría, vendríamos, vendrían**
**Decir—diría, dirías, diría, diríamos, dirían**
**Hacer—haría, harías, haría, haríamos, harían**

The conditional is sometimes used instead of the imperfect, and the conditional perfect instead of the pluperfect (past perfect) to express probability.

| | |
|---|---|
| **¿A qué hora llegó Vd.?** | At what time did you arrive? |
| **Serían las dos.** | It was probably two o'clock. |
| **Juan no vino a la escuela ayer; Estaría malo.** | Juan did not come to school yesterday; he was probably sick. |
| **¿Quien sería el?** | I wonder who he was. Who could he have been? |
| **La mujer habría estado mala.** | The woman had probably been sick. |

### CONDITIONAL PERFECT TENSE

The conditional perfect is formed by placing the conditional tense of the verb **"haber"** before the past participle of the main verb.

**IR**

**habría ido**—I would have gone
**habrías ido**—You would have gone
**habría ido**—He would have gone
**habríamos ido**—We would have gone
**habrían ido**—They would have gone

### VOCABULARY

**el permiso**—the permission, the permit
**el oro**—the gold
**el anillo**—the ring
**el número**—the number
**la botella**—the bottle
**el vino**—the wine
**la semana que entra**—next week
**la próximo semana**—next week
**el juego**—the game
**al fin de . . .**—at the end of
**durante**—during
**a la caída del sol**—at sunset
**levantar**—to pick up
**hacer preguntas**—to ask questions
**llamar**—to call
**prometer**—to promise
**estar ocupado**—to be busy

### EXERCISE NO. 2

1. Did you say that you would give me permission to go to the city?
2. I told him that I would pick him up early.
3. He would buy the gold ring from the man, but he doesn't have any money.
4. If he asks you any questions, can you tell him the truth?
5. I would call him by **(por)** telephone, but I do not know his number.
6. Luis told me that he would have the money next week.
7. They told us that you would take us to town.
8. Did he know that he would be able to do it?
9. What would you do during that time?
10. I did not go to see him because he said he would not be there.
11. I would have given him the bottle of wine, but he was not there.
12. Did he promise that he would pay you at the end of the month?
13. He told us that he would not come to visit us because he was very busy.
14. I told them that I would do it, but they wouldn't listen to me.
15. Miguel told my friend that he would leave Brownsville at sunset.
16. I wonder who was with Manuel at the game.
17. It was probably his cousin from New York.
18. He probably took her to the game as soon as she arrived.
19. Mr. Lopez was probably going to the theater.
20. They probably saw the children arrive.

## LESSON XVIII

## REFLEXIVE VERBS

The verb is said to be reflexive when the subject and the object pronoun are the same person or thing; that is, the subject does something to, or acts upon itself. A verb is made reflexive by the use of the following reflexive pronouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| **me**—myself | **nos**—ourselves |
| **te**—yourself (familiar) | |
| **se**—himself, herself | **se**—themselves |
| **se**—yourself | **se**—yourselves |

The reflexive pronouns follow the same rule for their location as do the direct and indirect object pronouns (see Lesson IX). In the infinitive form for vocabulary and dictionary research, the reflexive verb is written with the third person reflexive pronoun attached.

The addition of reflexive pronouns does not alter the original form of the verb; therefore, all reflexive verbs will follow the model given here:

**Levantarse**—to get (onself) up

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo me levanto** | I get (myself) up |
| **Tú te levantas** | You get (yourself) up |
| **Él se levanta** | He gets (himself) up |
| **Ella se levanta** | She gets (herself) up |
| **Vd. se levanta** | You get (yourself) up |
| **Nosotros (as) nos levantamos** | We get (ourselves) up |
| **Ellos se levantan** | They get (themselves) up |
| **Ellas se levantan** | They get (themselves) up |
| **Vds. se levantan** | You get (yourselves) up |

Many verbs may be reflexive or not, according to whether the subject acts upon itself (reflexive) or upon something or someone else (not reflexive).

| | |
|---|---|
| **Me lavo las manos.** | I wash my hands. (reflexive) |
| **Yo lavo la ropa.** | I wash the clothes. (not reflexive) |
| **Él se levantó temprano.** | He got up early. (reflexive) |
| **Su mamá lo levantó.** | His mother got him up (not reflexive) |
| **El extranjero se escondió allí.** | The alien hid there. (reflexive) |
| **El extranjero escondió la navaja allí.** | The alien hid the knife there. (not reflexive) |

Many verbs that are used reflexively in Spanish are not so used in English, consequently these do not "make sense" if attempt is made to parallel them to the English usage. The only manner of approaching them is to commit them to memory. Following is a list of some of the most common verbs which are reflexive in Spanish but not in English:

acordarse de (ue)—to remember
acostarse (ue)—to go to bed
bañarse—to take a bath
caerse—to fall
callarse—to be quiet
cansarse—to get tired
casarse (con)—to marry
dormirse (ue)—to fall asleep
escaparse—to escape
esconderse—to hide
bajarse—to alight, to get out (of a car or other vehicle)
hacerse—to become (plus noun)
llamarse—to be called, to be named
llavarse—to wash (oneself)
levantarse—to get up
pararse—to stop, to stand up
ponerse—to put on (clothing) to become (plus adjective)
quedarse—to stay, to remain
quitarse—to take off (clothing)
sentarse—to sit down
subirse—to climb, to get in (a car or other vehicle)
vestirse—to get dressed

### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AFTER PREPOSITIONS

In Spanish, the reflexive pronouns after prepositions have the following forms:

mí—myself
tí—yourself (familiar)
sí—himself, herself, yourself
nosotros, as—ourselves
sí—themselves, yourselves

| | |
|---|---|
| Ella siempre piensa en sí. | She always thinks of herself. |
| Él no habla nunca de sí. | He never speaks of himself. |
| No estamos pensando en nosotros. | We are not thinking of ourselves. |

The above may be intensified by the use of **"mismo, a, os, as."**

| | |
|---|---|
| Ella siempre piensa en sí misma. | She always thinks of herself. |
| El nunca habla de sí mismo. | He never speaks of himself. |
| No estamos pensando en nosotros mismos. | We are not thinking of ourselves. |

### RECIPROCAL VERBS

A reflexive pronoun may be used in a reciprocal sense, that is, the action is exchanged between various members of the subject. Such a use of a reflexive verb is translated by the expression "each other."

| | |
|---|---|
| **Se odian con pasión.** | They hate each other passionately. |
| **Nos queremos mucho.** | We love each other very much. |
| **Nos necesitamos.** | We need each other. |

### REFLEXIVE SUBSTITUTE FOR PASSIVE VOICE

A reflexive construction is often used in place of the true passive when the doer of the action is not stated and the subject of the passive sentence is not a person. The receiver of the action of a passive sentence becomes the subject of a normal reflexive construction in Spanish (as if it had done the action to itself, or they, to themselves). If the subject under consideration is singular, the verb goes in the singular; if the subject is plural, the verb goes in the plural.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Se vendió la casa ayer.** | The house was sold yesterday. |
| **Se han escrito muchas novelas sobre este tema.** | Many novels have been written about this theme. |

Notice that the reflexive verb will normally precede the subject when it is used passively.

### VOCABULARY

**los pobres**—the poor
**el policía**—the policeman
**la guerra**—the war
**la fecha**—the date
**la cara**—the face
**el pelo**—the hair
**la cárcel**—the jail
**el edificio**—the building
**el apartamiento**—the apartment
**la orilla**—the edge, the bank
**el arroyo**—the creek
**el lado**—the side
**el chaparral**—the brush
**al mayoreo**—wholesale
**triste**—sad
**el mes pasado**—last month
**más temprano**—earlier
**estar acostumbrado a**—to be used to
**estar cansado**—to be tired
**telefonear**—to telephone
**gatear**—to crawl

### EXERCISE

1. At what time did you get up this morning?
2. I got up at six this morning, but I am used to getting up earlier.
3. How long did John stay in Juarez before entering the United States?
4. I don't remember the date, but I think he arrived the fifth of last month.
5. When I entered the house last night, I took off my hat, I washed my face and hands, and I sat at the table to eat.

6. Maria told me that she didn't wash her hair because she didn't have time.
7. How many times did you stop when you were going to Las Vegas, and how long did you stay in each place?
8. Do you know the name of the smuggler who smuggled you to this side?
9. Enrique was taking a bath when Maria telephoned him.
10. I was trying to escape when the officers arrested me.
11. How did you escape from jail the last time you were arrested?
12. Here, clothes are sold wholesale.
13. He put on his hat, got in the car, and went home where he was arrested by the policeman.
14. In this building, rooms and apartments are sold to the poor.
15. (At) what time did you go to bed last night?
16. At eleven, but it was about 2:30 when I fell asleep.
17. I put the newspaper on the table, but it is not there now.
18. He sat down and began to talk to me about the war.
19. The child's mother bathes him every morning at nine o'clock.
20. Her mother got her up very early yesterday.
21. Get in the car, but be careful not to fall.
22. The two men took off their shoes and crawled through the brush until they reached **(llegar a)** the bank of the creek.
23. Many cows are sold on this ranch.
24. She has to get dressed in thirty minutes.
25. Be quiet ! I am tired of hearing you.

## LESSON XIX

## EXPRESSIONS OF COMPARISON

There are two ways of comparing adjectives and adverbs in English:

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| slow | slower | slowest |
| beautiful | more beautiful | most beautiful |

In Spanish the comparison of adjectives is formed similar to the second example above. The word **"más"** is placed before the positive for the comparative degree, and the definite article is placed before the comparative degree to obtain the superlative.

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| **rico** (rich) | **más rico** (richer) | **el más rico** (richest) |
| **rica** (rich) | **más rica** (richer) | **la más rica** (richest) |
| **ricos** (rich) | **más ricos** (richer) | **los más ricos** (richest) |
| **ricas** (rich) | **más ricas** (richer) | **las más ricas** (richest) |

The comparison of adverbs is the same as for adjectives except that in the superlative degree the definite article is not used as it is in the comparison of adjectives.

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| **rápido** (fast) | **más rápido** (faster) | **más rápido** (fastest |
| **despacio** (slow) | **más despacio** (slower) | **más despacio** (slowest) |

When introducing a phrase or clause not containing a conjugated verb "than" is expressed by **"que"**; however, if it precedes a number **"de"** is used.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Soy más alto que María.** | I am taller than Maria. |
| **Ella es más rica que Juan.** | She is richer than Juan. |
| **La casa vale más de diez mil dólares.** | The house is worth more than ten thousand dollars. |
| **Este mes se pasó más despacio que el mes pasado.** | This month went by slower than last month. |
| **Yo corro más rápido que tú.** | I run faster than you. |

But when the "than" clause contains a conjugated verb, "than" is rendered in Spanish by the full forms: (a) **de lo que,** (b) **de la que,** (c) **de los que,** etc. **"De lo que"** is used when the antecedent is an adjective or adverb, the inflected forms are used when the antecedent is a noun.

**La ofensa era más seria de lo que creíamos.**

The offense was more serious than (what) we thought.

**Juan corre más rápido de lo que me imaginaba.**
Juan runs faster than I imagined.

**Él tiene más dinero del que necesita.**
He has more money than (what) he needs.

**Ella vendió más canastas de las que esperaba vender.**
She sold more baskets than (what) she expected to sell.

In the superlative degree, "of" or "in" is translated by **"de."**

**Este hombre es el más rico del pueblo.**
This man is the richest in town.

**María es la más linda de la clase.**
Maria is the prettiest of the class.

**La mujer más alta no vino.**
The tallest woman didn't come.

**La más alta mujer no vino.**
The tallest woman didn't come.

As seen in the last two examples above, the word order of the superlative may take either form. The first is the most common.

The possessive adjective may take the place of the definite article.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mi primo más alto está aquí.** | My tallest cousin is here. |
| **Su amigo más íntimo está malo.** | His closest friend is sick. |

The comparative of an adjective or adverb may be of a lesser degree rather than a greater degree. In this case the word **"menos"** is used instead of **"más"**. In all the foregoing examples, **"menos,"** meaning "less," can replace **"más"** to render the opposite effect.

There are four adjectives that are compared irregularly in Spanish. Of the four **"grande"** and **"pequeño"** are also compared regularly, in which case they have their regular meaning of size. The irregular comparisons of **"grande"** and **"pequeño"** generally refer to age.

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| **bueno** (good) | **mejor** (better) | **el mejor** (the best) |
| **malo** (bad) | **peor** (worse) | **el peor** (the worst) |
| **grande** (large, old) | **mayor** (older)[1] | **el mayor** (the oldest) |
| **pequeño** (small, young) | **menor** (younger) | **el menor** (the youngest) |

---

[1] Old (**viejo**) and young (**joven**) can also be compared regularly, but this is generally for animals and things.

**Este hombre es mayor que mi hermano, pero es más pequeño.**
This man is older than my brother, but he is smaller.

**Juan es el más pequeño de mis hijos, pero no es el menor.**
Juan is the smallest of my sons, but he is not the youngest.

Notice the following uses of **"mayor"** and **"menor".**

**Perdí la mayor parte de mi dinero.**
I lost the greater part (most) of my money.

**Esta tienda vende al por mayor.**
This store sells at wholesale.

**Aquella tienda vende al por menor.**
That store sells at retail.

There are also four adverbs which are compared irregularly:

| *Positive* | *Comparative* | *Superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| **bien** (well) | **mejor** (better) | **mejor** (best) |
| **mal** (badly) | **peor** (worse) | **peor** (worst) |
| **mucho** (much) | **más** (more) | **más** (most) |
| **poco** (little) | **menos** (less) | **menos** (least) |

### ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE

The absolute superlative is formed by adding **"ísimo, ísima, ísimos, or ísimas"** to the adjective or adverb. If the adjective ends in a vowel, remove the vowel before attaching the endings. Do the same for adverbs. The absolute superlative does not directly compare one thing to another, but merely states "a greater amount of," and can be translated in English by placing "very" before the adjective or adverb.

| *Adjective or Adverb* | *Absolute Superlative* | *English* |
|---|---|---|
| **linda** | **lindísima** | very pretty |
| **rico** | **riquísimo** | very rich |
| **mucho** | **muchísimo** | very much |
| **feo** | **feísimo** | very ugly |

The same idea can be expressed by using the adverb **"muy"** in front of the adjective; however, the absolute superlative is stronger. **"Muy"** cannot be properly used before **"mucho, a,"** or **"muchos, as."**

| | |
|---|---|
| **María es lindísima.** | Maria is very pretty. (emphatic) |
| **María es muy linda.** | Maria is very pretty. |
| **Muchísimas gracias.** | Thank you very, very much. |
| **Hay muchísimas casas.** | There are very many houses. |
| **Esta sopa es riquísima.** | This soup is extremely rich. |

### COMPARISON OF EQUALITY

In making comparisons of equality in Spanish, the English words "as," "as much," and "as many" are replaced by the Spanish words **"tan," "tanto, a," "tantos, as"** respectively. The second word "as," translated into Spanish by **"como,"** is invariable.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **tan** | **como** | as | as |
| **tanto, a** | **como** | as much | as |
| **tantos, as** | **como** | as many | as |

In the first case in the foregoing examples the comparison is of an adjective and the word **"tan"** is an adverb and is invariable. In the second and third cases above the comparisons are of amount and number of nouns, and the words stating the amount or number are adjectives and as such are variable as adjectives and agree in number and gender with the word modified.

| | |
|---|---|
| **María es tan alta como Juan.** | Maria is as tall as Juan. |
| **Este libro es tan grande como el suyo.** | This book is as large as yours. |
| **Juan tiene tanto dinero como Eduardo.** | Juan has as much money as Eduardo. |
| **Hay tanta tinta en este tintero como en aquél.** | There is as much ink in this inkwell as in that one. |
| **José tiene tantos libros como Ana.** | Jose has as many books as Ana. |
| **Él ha escrito tantas cartas como Vd.** | He has written as many letters as you. |

### "SINO"—How Used

The connective **"sino"**, meaning "but", is used instead of **"pero"** in an affirmative statement in which the verb is omitted following a negative statement.

| | |
|---|---|
| **No voy al teatro sino a la iglesia.** | I am not going to the theater but to church. |
| **Él no es americano sino español.** | He is not an American but a Spaniard. |

but:

| | |
|---|---|
| **No tengo libros pero tengo plumas.** | I do not have any books, but I have some pens. |

### "ONLY"—How Expressed

The English word "only" is expressed in several different ways in Spanish.

| | |
|---|---|
| **No leo sino libros ingleses.** | I read only English books. |
| **No tengo sino cuatro pesos.** | I have only four dollars. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tengo sólo cuatro pesos.** | I have only four dollars. |
| **Tengo cuatro pesos no más.** | I have only four dollars. (I have four dollars, no more.) |
| **No tengo más que cuatro pesos.** | I have only four dollars (no more than four dollars). |

but:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tengo más de cuatro pesos.** | I have more than four dollars. |
| **Tengo menos de cuatro pesos.** | I have less than four dollars. |

## VOCABULARY

**la cicatriz**—the scar
**el café**—the coffee
**el recibo**—the receipt
**la taza**—the cup
**el fútbol**—the football
**el béisbol**—the baseball
**nadie**—no one, nobody, anybody
**corto**—short
**rápido**—fast
**gastar**—to spend
**jugar**—to play
**ocupar**—to hire
**correr**—to run
**terminar**—to finish
**sembrar**—to plant (seed)
**nacer**—to be born
**expedir**—to issue
**prometer**—to promise
**parecer**—to seem

## EXERCISE

1. He has as many children as your friend, but his children are in Mexico.
2. His scar is larger than hers.
3. Your coffee is better than mine.
4. This receipt is older than that one, but that one is better.
5. He intends to come later than anyone.
6. The cups they have are prettier than the ones they sold.
7. Girls are wearing shorter skirts now.
8. Teofilo looks younger than his brother.
9. The card was issued sooner than the promised date.
10. My wife spends more money than I earn.
11. I didn't intend to buy it, but I bought it.
12. I do not want to buy it but borrow it.
13. He doesn't play football but baseball.
14. We have only four days to work.
15. They have more than five days to get their passports.
16. He does not hire wetbacks but contract laborers.
17. Mr. Lopez didn't hire "wetbacks" this year, but he did last year.
18. The children can run faster than you or I.
19. They will finish sooner than those men.
20. The farmers have planted more corn this year than last year.
21. They owe me more than fifty dollars.
22. Mr. Jones is the richest man in our town, but he is sick.

23. He lives in the tallest building on Tenth Avenue.
24. John does not earn more than five dollars a day, but he doesn't spend as much as his brother.
25. My youngest son was born in the United States in 1958.
26. His best friend is extremely tall.
27. Thanks a million!

## LESSON XX

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

There are three moods in Spanish as well as in English; namely, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative.

The indicative mood points out a thing as material or existing either affirmatively or negatively, and is based upon certainties or facts.

The imperative mood commands.

The subjunctive mood expresses an attitude, and is subservient to, or contingent upon some leading or governing idea expressed in an independent clause of causation, doubt, desire, emotion, or uncertainty. The subjunctive is a secondary or dependent thought or idea, and is found in the dependent clause. The subjunctive never makes a direct statement, nor asks a direct question.

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Like the polite commands, the present subjunctive is formed by attaching the following endings to the stem of the first person singular of the present indicative of regular and irregular verbs:

| | |
|---|---|
| "AR" verbs: | **e, es, e, emos, en** |
| "ER" verbs: | **a, as, a, amos, an** |
| "IR" verbs: | **a, as, a, amos, an** |

| ***Hablar*** | ***Comer*** | ***Escribir*** |
|---|---|---|
| **hable** | **coma** | **escriba** |
| **hables** | **comas** | **escribas** |
| **hable** | **coma** | **escriba** |
| **hablemos** | **comamos** | **escribamos** |
| **hablen** | **coman** | **escriban** |

The same verbs that do not adhere to the above rules in the command form do not adhere in the present subjunctive.

| | |
|---|---|
| **dar** .............. | **dé, des, dé, demos, den** |
| **estar** ............ | **esté, estés, esté, estemos, estén** |
| **haber** ............ | **haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayan** |
| **ir** ................ | **vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayan** |
| **saber** ............ | **sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, sepan** |
| **ser** .............. | **sea, seas, sea, seamos, sean** |

### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The present progressive subjunctive is formed by placing the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb **"estar"** in front of the present participle of the principal verb.

| *Tomar* | *Vender* | *Escribir* |
|---|---|---|
| **esté tomando** | **esté vendiendo** | **esté escribiendo** |
| **estés tomando** | **estés vendiendo** | **estés escribiendo** |
| **esté tomando** | **esté vendiendo** | **esté escribiendo** |
| **estemos tomando** | **estemos vendiendo** | **estemos escribiendo** |
| **estén tomando** | **estén vendiendo** | **estén escribiendo** |

### PRESENT PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The present perfect subjunctive is formed by placing the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb **"haber"** in front of the past participle of the principal verb.

| *Tomar* | *Vender* | *Escribir* |
|---|---|---|
| **haya tomado** | **haya vendido** | **haya escrito** |
| **hayas tomado** | **hayas vendido** | **hayas escrito** |
| **haya tomado** | **haya vendido** | **haya escrito** |
| **hayamos tomado** | **hayamos vendido** | **hayamos escrito** |
| **hayan tomado** | **hayan vendido** | **hayan escrito** |

### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

There is only one simple past tense in the subjunctive mood, and this is formed by adding the following endings to the third person plural of the preterite indicative after dropping the final "on". These endings are the same for all three conjugations of regular and irregular verbs: **a, as, a, amos, an.** The first person plural bears a written accent over the last vowel before the last "r".

| *Tomaron* | *Vendieron* | *Escribieron* |
|---|---|---|
| **tomara** | **vendiera** | **escribiera** |
| **tomaras** | **vendieras** | **escribieras** |
| **tomara** | **vendiera** | **escribiera** |
| **tomáramos** | **vendiéramos** | **escribiéramos** |
| **tomaran** | **vendieran** | **escribieran** |

| *Anduvieron* | *Hicieron* | *Dijeron* |
|---|---|---|
| **anduviera** | **hiciera** | **dijera** |
| **anduvieras** | **hicieras** | **dijeras** |
| **anduviera** | **hiciera** | **dijera** |
| **anduviéramos** | **hiciéramos** | **dijéramos** |
| **anduvieran** | **hicieran** | **dijeran** |

### PAST PROGRESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The past progressive subjunctive is formed by placing the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb **"estar"** in front of the present participle of the principal verb.

| *Tomar* | *Vender* | *Decir* |
|---|---|---|
| **estuviera tomando** | **estuviera vendiendo** | **estuviera diciendo** |
| **estuvieras tomando** | **estuvieras vendiendo** | **estuvieras diciendo** |
| **estuviera tomando** | **estuviera vendiendo** | **estuviera diciendo** |
| **estuviéramos tomando** | **estuviéramos vendiendo** | **estuviéramos diciendo** |
| **estuvieran tomando** | **estuvieran vendiendo** | **estuvieran diciendo** |

### PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The pluperfect subjunctive is formed by placing the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb **"haber"** in front of the past participle of the principal verb.

| *Tomar* | *Hacer* | *Decir* |
|---|---|---|
| **hubiera tomado** | **hubiera hecho** | **hubiera dicho** |
| **hubieras tomado** | **hubieras hecho** | **hubieras dicho** |
| **hubiera tomado** | **hubiera hecho** | **hubiera dicho** |
| **hubiéramos tomado** | **hubiéramos hecho** | **hubiéramos dicho** |
| **hubieran tomado** | **hubieran hecho** | **hubieran dicho** |

## USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

### AFTER VERBS OF CAUSING

One of the principal uses of the subjunctive is after verbs expressing an action calculated to cause another person or thing to act or not to act. The force of the verb of causing varies from an authoritative command to a mild request or preference. What is true of the above is equally applicable to verbs of opposite effect, i.e., tending to prevent another from doing something. The following verbs in the independent clause require the verb of the dependent clause to be in the subjunctive provided that there is a change of subject in the clauses.

**decir**—to tell (order)
**desear**—to wish
**dejar**—to let, allow
**mandar**—to order, command
**pedir (i)**—to ask
**permitir**—to permit
**preferir (ie)**—to prefer
**prohibir**—to prohibit
**querer**—to want
**rogar (ue)**—to beg, pray

All verbs of causing, except "prefer", in English are followed by the infinitive, consequently there is no clue as to whether to use a present or past subjunctive in the dependent clause in Spanish. With these verbs, the translator must refer to the principal clause in order to determine what tense to use. If the verb in the main clause is in the present, present progressive, present perfect, command, or future, the verb in the dependent (subjunctive) clause is in the present tense. If the verb in the main clause is in the imperfect, preterite, past perfect, past progressive, or conditional, the verb in the dependent clause is in the imperfect subjunctive.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Le digo que vaya.** | I tell him to go. |
| **Le he dicho que vaya.** | I have told him to go. |
| **Quería que John fuera.** | I wanted John to go. |
| **Les mandarán que pasen.** | They will order them to pass. |

The verbs **"decir"**, **"mandar"**, **"pedir"**, and **"rogar"** generally use an indirect object pronoun even though there may be a noun in the English sentence. This noun serves both as the indirect object of one of the four verbs mentioned and as the subject of the subjunctive clause. With these four verbs, it is generally not necessary to use the subject in the subjunctive clause.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Le dije a Guillermo que fuera conmigo.** | I told Guillermo to go with me. |
| **Les rogamos a los extranjeros que no se escaparan.** | We begged the aliens not to escape. |

The verbs **"dejar"**, **"permitir"**, and **"prohibir"** may be followed by an infinitive provided that indirect object pronouns are used.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él deja que traigamos a nuestros padres.**<br>**or**<br>**Él nos deja traer a nuestros padres.** | He lets us bring our parents. |
| **Prohibo que Mario vaya.**<br>**or**<br>**Le prohibo a Mario ir.** | I prohibit Mario from going. |

### VOCABULARY

**aduaneros**—customs officers
**el aeropuerto**—the airport
**el gobierno**—the government
**la elección**—the election
**la autoridad**—the authority
**otro**—another
**necesario**—necessary
**unos cuantos**—a few
**unos pocos**—a few
**reportar** (slang)—to report
**votar**—to vote
**registrarse**—to registrar

### EXERCISE NO. 1

1. The consul told Mr. Lopez to return next week.
2. Mr. Guerra told him that he couldn't obtain the necessary papers.
3. Tell them to stay on that side for a few days.
4. The customs agents ordered us to show them our suitcases.
5. They asked us to open them and[1] to take out our clothes.
6. Does Eloisa want us to take her to the airport?
7. We begged her to stay for a few more weeks.
8. We do not permit aliens to vote in United States elections.
9. Did they allow you to register for another year?
10. I prohibit you from telling your friend about us.
11. The Mexican authorities shouldn't let your sister escape.
12. We wanted to come to this side with our parents.
13. Do you wish to obtain some false certificates?
14. Tell your mother to write the consul for a visa.
15. The United States Government prefers that all aliens report to this office before leaving.

### EXPRESSIONS OF FEELING OR EMOTION

If the verb of the main clause expresses emotion or feeling, the verb of the dependent clause will be in the subjunctive. When there is no change of subject with these verbs or expressions, the infinitive is more common. Some verbs of feeling or emotion are:

**alegrarse de**—to be glad
**esperar**—to hope, to expect
**extrañarse**—to be surprised
**sentir (ie)**—to be sorry
**sorprenderse**—to be surprised
**temer**—to fear
**tener miedo**—to be afraid

| | |
|---|---|
| **Espero que Carlos llegue a tiempo.** | I hope that Carlos arrives on time. |
| **Nos alegramos de que Vds. no estuvieran malos.** | We are glad that you were not ill. |
| **Se sorpendió que yo no hubiera trabajado más.** | He was surprised that I had not worked more. |
| **Siento que el estuviera enfermo.** | I am sorry that he was sick. |
| **Espero ir.** | I hope to go. (No change of subject; therefore, no subjunctive.) |

---

[1] When the independent verb governs two or more subjunctive verbs, it is generally better Spanish to repeat the conjunction "**que**".

The subjunctive is used after **"ojalá"** (that God grant) which has the force of a verb of wishing. **"Ojalá"** means "I wish" or "I hope" and is used with the first person singular only.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ojalá que recibamos la carta hoy.** | I hope that (O that) we receive the letter today. |
| **Ojalá que él venga mañana.** | I hope he comes tomorrow. |
| **Ella desea que su prima estuviera aquí.** | She wishes that her cousin were here. |
| **Ojalá que yo hubiera ahorrado más dinero.** | I wish I had saved more money. |
| **Ojalá que ella vaya.** | I hope she goes. |

### EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT OR DENIAL

When the verb of the main clause expresses doubt or denial, or is used negatively or interrogatively expressing belief or understanding, the verb of the dependent clause will be in the subjunctive. Some of the most common verbs of doubt or denial are:

**dudar**—to doubt
**negar (ie)**—to deny
**no creer**—not to believe

| | |
|---|---|
| **Yo dudo que el tenga tanto dinero.** | I doubt that he has so much money. |
| **María no creía que Juan estuviera en ese lugar.** | Maria didn't believe that Juan was in that place. |
| **Él niega que él le haya dado el dinero a ella.** | He denies that he has given her the money. |
| **No dudo que él está loco.** | I do not doubt that he is crazy. (There is no doubt.) |
| **Enrique no niega que ella lo hizo.** | Enrique does not deny that she did it. |

Verbs of doubt or denial are usually followed by the infinitive when there is no change of subject.

### IMPERSONAL EXPRESSIONS

Provided there is a change of subject, the subjunctive is used after impersonal expressions unless certainties are expressed. A few impersonal expressions are:

**Ser dudoso**—to be doubtful
**Ser importante**—to be important
**Ser imposible**—to be impossible
**Ser lástima**—to be a pity
**Ser necesario**—to be necessary
**Ser posible**—to be possible

| | |
|---|---|
| **Es lástima que ella no esté aquí.** | It is a pity that she isn't here. |
| **Era imposible cruzar de día.** | It was impossible to cross by day. |
| **No es necesario que Vd. lo firme.** | It isn't necessary for you to sign it. |
| **Es dudoso que él lo haya hecho.** | It is doubtful that he has done it. |
| **Será importante llegar a tiempo.** | It will be important to arrive on time. |

### VOCABULARY

**el equipaje**—the luggage, baggage
**el sueldo**—the wages
**la propiedad**—the property
**el banquero**—the banker
**el corralón**—the large yard (the detention camp—Mexican border)
**perdido**—lost
**pronto**—soon
**continuar**—to continue
**vadear**—to wade
**ser dueño de**—to own

### EXERCISE NO. 2

1. Are you surprised that Eliseo is still living here?
2. Their relatives were glad that they were not arrested.
3. Why are you glad that Minerva has not arrived?
4. His mother hopes that he will marry soon.
5. Aren't you afraid to continue without washing your hands?
6. I am sorry that you have lost your baggage.
7. We cannot deny that we waded the river.
8. He doesn't believe that your maid is a United States citizen.
9. Marcos knows that he will be released by tomorrow.
10. Is it necessary to be a United States citizen to own property here?
11. It was necessary that we send his him wages.
12. It is a pity that you are not going with us.
13. Is it true that you knew the banker?
14. It will be impossible to take all these men to the detention camp.
15. They hoped that it would be important.

### AFTER RELATIVE PRONOUNS

The subjunctive is used in the dependent clause after a relative pronoun referring to a person or thing that is indefinite or unknown.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Busco a una criada que sepa cocinar.** | I am looking for a servant (unknown to speaker) who knows how to cook. |
| **Le daré dos pesos al muchocho que me enseñe la casa del contrabandista.** | I will give two pesos to the boy (unknown) who shows me the smuggler's house. |
| **Le dí dos pesos al muchacho que me enseño la casa del contrabandista.** | I gave two pesos to the boy (now known) who showed me the smuggler's house. |

### AFTER CONJUNCTIVE EXPRESSIONS

The subjunctive is used after these conjunctive expressions expressing supposition, purpose, result, concession, or provision.

**antes (de) que**—before
**a menos que**—unless
**con tal (de) que**—provided that
**para que**—in order that (for), so that
**siempre que**—provided that
**suponiendo que**—supposing that

| | |
|---|---|
| **Iré antes de que él vuelva.** | I will go before he returns. |
| **Aquí la traigo a menos que la haya perdido.** | I have it here unless I have lost it. |
| **Con tal que Vd. nos diga la verdad, le soltaremos mañana.** | Provided (that) you tell us the truth, we will let you go tomorrow. |

When there is future time expressed or implied, the subjunctive is used with the following expressions.

**cuando**—when
**hasta que**—until
**luego que**—as soon as
**para cuando**—by the time
**quizá(s)**—perhaps, maybe
**tan pronto como**—as soon as

| | |
|---|---|
| **Estaré aquí cuando él venga.** | I shall be here when he comes. |
| **Él esperará hasta que Vd. diga.** | He will wait until you say. |
| **Estará lista para cuando él llegue.** | It will be ready by the time he arrives. |
| **Él dijo que me pagaría luego que ganara el dinero.** | He said he would pay me as soon as he earned the money. |
| **Hablamos hasta que se fué.** | We talked until he left. (Both definitely completed past actions; therefore no subjunctive.) |

### VOCABULARY

**la recámara**—the bedroom
**la casa de remolque**—the house trailer
**la secretaria**—the secretary
**la sala de espera**—the waiting room
**el correo**—the mail; the post office
**el paquete**—the package
**guapo**—handsome
**inteligente**—intelligent
**permanente**—permanent
**plantar**—to plant
**sembrar**—to sow, to plant (seed)
**llover (ue)**—to rain
**regar (ie)**—to irrigate
**volverse loco**—to go crazy
**tener listo**—to have ready

### EXERCISE NO 3

1. We need a house that has three bedrooms.
2. They have a house trailer that is too small.
3. She is looking for a man who is handsome, intelligent, and rich.
4. Mr. Billings wants a secretary who can speak Spanish.
5. He has a sister who went crazy many years ago.

6. The farmer is looking for a man who will work for him.
7. The laborers have to plant the cotton before it rains.
8. We plan to leave unless he pays us more money.
9. Bonifacio will help you irrigate provided you give him a permanent job.
10. Bring your documents here as soon as you find them.
11. I will have them ready so that you may sell them tomorrow.
12. Supposing you bring her, what will she say?
13. Tell him to wait in the waiting room until we come.
14. Enrique waited until the mail left.
15. As soon as Alfonso became rich, he forgot his old friends.
16. When you obtain the necessary papers you can begin to live here.
17. I want you to have it ready by the time they come.
18. Marta and Gloria were here by the time the packages arrived.
19. He crossed the river before the officers could stop him.
20. He said he would leave whenever you told him.

### IN CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

A condition contrary to fact is a most obvious case of unreality. Exactly as in English, when a clause introduced by "if" makes a supposition that is contrary to fact (If I were you, but I am not, etc.), a past subjunctive must be employed in the "if" clause".

### CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT IN PRESENT TIME

The verb in the result clause may be in the conditional or the imperfect subjunctive, and the verb in the if clause must be in the imperfect subjunctive. The order of these two clauses does not matter; either may come first. In the following examples, the result clause is underlined in both English and Spanish.

I would buy the house if I had the money.
Yo compraría la casa si tuviera el dinero.
Yo comprara la casa si tuviera el dinero.

If he were here, would you tell him the truth?
Si él estuviera aquí, ¿le diría Vd. la verdad?
Si él estuviera aquí, ¿le dijera Vd. la verdad?

If the result clause in English is in any tense other than the conditional, the indicative is used in the if clause.

I will buy the house if I have the money.
Yo compraré la casa si tengo el dinero.

If he is here, will you tell him the truth?
Si él está aquí, ¿le dirá Vd. la verdad?

## CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT IN PAST TIME

The verb in the result clause may be in the conditional perfect or the pluperfect subjunctive, and the verb of the "if clause" must be in the pluperfect subjunctive. It does not matter which of these two clauses precedes. The "result clause" is underlined in both Spanish and English.

I would have bought the house if I had had the money.
**Yo habría comprado la casa si yo hubiera tenido el dinero.**
**Yo hubiera comprado la casa si yo hubiera tenido el dinero.**

If he had been here, would you have told him the truth?
**Si él hubiera estado aquí, ¿le habría dicho Vd. la verdad?**
**Si él hubiera esado aquí, ¿le hubiera dicho Vd. la verdad?**

### VOCABULARY

**el empleo**—the job
**la oportunidad**—the opportunity
**la novia**—the girl friend
**el edificio**—the building
**la fiesta**—the party, the celebration
**bastante**—enough, plenty
**suficiente**—enough, plenty
**escuchar**—to listen
**hacer calor**—to be warm
**advertir (ie)**—to warn

### EXERCISE NO. 4

1. If there were plenty of work in the fields, would you work there?
2. If Manuel has enough money, will he buy it?
3. You would not be in jail now if you had listened to me.
4. Would they have escaped if you had not told them?
5. If you did not have employment, I would help you.
6. I would go to town if it were not so warm.
7. Would you return to that country if you had the opportunity?
8. If there had been an officer there, would your girl friend have warned you?
9. If you had known that you were going to be arrested, would you have entered the building?
10. I would have remained at the party if I had seen you.

## LESSON XXI

### WORD STUDY

The following suggestions should be of help to a beginner in the study of the Spanish language. They are not at all complete so should be remembered only as general suggestions.

The principal method of combining nouns is by placing the secondary or modifying noun last and connecting the two by **"de"**.

**traje de baile**—ball dress
**jugo de limón**—lemon juice
**anillo de oro**—gold ring
**labor de betabel**—beet field
**caballo de silla**—saddle horse
**molino de viento**—windmill
**traje de lana**—woolen suit
**tarjeta de bracero**—bracero card

If the secondary noun expresses purpose or use for which the first is intended, use **"para"** instead of **"de"**.

**estante para libros**—book case
**vaso para cerveza**—beer glass
**percha para sombreros**—hat rack
**vestidos para niñas**—children's dresses

An infinitive is often used as a verbal noun expressed in English by the gerund.

**máquina de coser**—sewing machine
**pluma de dibujar**—drawing pen
**papel de escribir**—writing paper
**máquina de escribir**—typewriter

**"Ero"** added to words of commerce forms the noun denoting the dealer in those articles, while **"ería"** added to those words usually denotes the shop or place of business.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **zapato** | **zapatero** | **zapatería** | **reloj** | **relojero** | **relojería** |
| shoe | shoemaker | shoe shop | watch | watchmaker | watch shop |
| **leche** | **lechero** | **lechería** | **joya** | **joyero** | **joyería** |
| milk | milkman | dairy | jewel | jeweler | jewelry store, shop |

The names of many fruit trees ending in "o" change the "o" to "a" for the fruit.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **cerezo** | **cereza** | **naranjo** | **naranja** |
| cherry tree | cherry | orange tree | orange |
| **manzano** | **manzana** | **ciruelo** | **ciruela** |
| apple tree | apple | plum tree | plum |

The feminine form of a past participle often expresses the completed action of the verb from which it came.

| | |
|---|---|
| **llegar**—to arrive | **llegada**—arrival |
| **entrar**—to enter | **entrada**—entrance |
| **venir**—to come | **venida**—arrival, coming |
| **salir**—to leave | **salida**—departure, leaving |

The following words, opposite in meaning, should be noted:

| | |
|---|---|
| **caballero**—gentleman | **dama**—lady |
| **caballo**—horse | **yegua**—mare |
| **yerno**—son-in-law | **nuera**—daughter-in-law |
| **toro**—bull | **vaca**—cow |

**"Ito, a"; "cito, a"; "ecito, a"**, when added to a noun convey the additional idea of sweet, nice, or little.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **madrecita** | dear mother | **hermanito** | little brother |
| **pobrecito** | poor little one | **cabrito** | kid (little goat) |
| **chiquito** | very small | **perrito** | pup (little dog) |

Proper names often add **"ito"**, and **"ita"**, as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Juan** | **Juanito** | Johnny |
| **Carlos** | **Carlitos** | Charlie |
| **Ana** | **Anita** | Annie |
| **Ricardo** | **Ricardito** | Dickie |

**"Illo"**, **"cillo"**, and **"ecillo"** are added to words to form diminutives:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **campana** | bell | **campanilla** | hand bell |
| **muestra** | sample | **muestrecilla** | little sample |
| **chico** | little | **chiquillo** | very little |

Note the diminutive form of the following adjectives and adverbs:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **ahora** | **ahorita** | **pronto** | **prontito** |
| now | right now | soon | very soon |
| **cerca** | **cerquita** | **poco** | **poquito** |
| near | very near | little | very little |

Some nouns form the augmentatives by adding **"ón"** for the masculine and **"ona"** for the feminine.

| | |
|---|---|
| **hombre**—man | **hombrón**—large man |
| **mujer**—woman | **mujerona**—large woman |
| **soltera**—woman (single) | **solterona**—woman (old maid) |
| **zapatos**—shoes | **zapatones**—very large shoes |

Certain Spanish verbs include the English preposition.

| | |
|---|---|
| **escuchar**—to listen to | **mirar**—to look at |
| **esperar**—to wait for | **buscar**—to look for |
| **pedir**—to ask for | **ponerse**—to put on |
| **quitarse**—to take off | **sacar**—to take out |

Verbs of motion, teaching, learning, and beginning require "a" before a following infinitive.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **venir**—to come | **Vengo a trabajar** | I come to work. |
| **ensenar**—to teach | **Les enseñó a pizcar.** | He taught them to pick (cotton, etc.) |
| **aprender**—to learn | **Aprendemos a escribir.** | We are learning to write. |
| **empezar**—to start | **Empezarán a lavar.** | They will start to wash. |

Some verbs require **"de"** before a following infinitive, noun, or pronoun.

**acordarse de**—to remember
**tratar de**—to try to
**acabar de**—to have just
**dejar de**—to cease, to stop

| | |
|---|---|
| **No me acuerdo de él.** | I don't remember him. |
| **Acabo de estudiar mi lección.** | I have just studied my lesson. |
| **Él trató de hacerlo.** | He tried to do it. |
| **El niño dejó de llorar.** | The child stopped crying. |

Some verbs require **"en"** before a following infinitive, noun, or pronoun.

**insistir en**—to insist
**convenir en**—to agree
**tardar en**—to be late
**fijarse en**—to notice

| | |
|---|---|
| **Insiste en hablar contigo.** | He insists on talking to you. |
| **Convinieron en pagar por el cuarto.** | They agreed to pay for the room. |
| **No tardaré en llegar.** | I will not be late in arriving. |
| **Fíjese en esa muchacha.** | Notice that girl. |

## WORDS SIMILAR IN ENGLISH AND SPANISH

Following is a list of Spanish words alike or almost alike in spelling, and alike in meaning in at least one acceptation to their English equivalents. However, the following orthographic peculiarities are to be observed:

Spanish admits of no doubled consonants except “cc” and, in very few cases, the “nn”. The “ll” is not regarded as a double consonant, but as the sign for a particular sound; hence “college” is **“colegio”**. And “cc” occurs only before “e” and “i”; hence “accumulative” is **“acumulativo”**.

The “n” of the prefixes **“in”** and **“con”** does not change to “m” before a word beginning with “m”, as is the case in English; therefore “immersion” is **“inmersión”**; “immortal” is **“inmortal”**; “commotion” is **“conmoción”**.

“Qu” becomes “cu”: ‘frequent” is **“frecuente”**; “consequence” is **“consecuencia”**; “adequate” is **“adecuado”**.

Initial “s”, followed by a consonant, takes an “e” before it: “squadron” is **“escuadrón”**; “spiral” is **“espiral”**; “strict” is **“estricto”**.

In this list of words a slight change is made in the ending of the English word to obtain the Spanish.

**abrupto**
**absceso**
**absoluto**
**absorbente**
**abstinente**
**abstracto**
**absurdo**
**abundante**
**abusivo**
**acceso**
**accidente**
**acento**
**ácido**
**acróbata**
**activo**
**acto**
**adjetivo**
**adulterante**
**adulto**
**adverbio**
**aeroplano**
**ágata**
**agente**
**agresivo**
**agresor**
**aire**
**alarma**
**alarmista**
**amazona**
**alfabeto**
**altitud**
**antecedente**
**antídoto**
**aparte**
**apetito**
**aplauso**
**apóstol**
**apto**
**archivo**
**argumento**
**árido**
**aristócrata**
**arma**
**arrogante**
**asfalto**
**ártico**
**asalto**
**astuto**
**Atlántico**
**átomo**
**atractivo**
**autócrata**
**automático**

**bálsamo**
**banco**
**banquete**
**barbarismo**
**barbero**
**barómetro**
**baronesa**
**bastardo**
**bautismo**
**bayoneta**
**Biblia**
**biplano**
**bote (boat)**
**bravo**
**burlesco**
**busto**

**cablegrama**
**calendario**
**calma**
**candidato**
**canino**
**canoa**
**carácter**
**caravana**
**carbonato**
**carpintero**
**caso**
**católico**
**causa**
**caverna**
**cemento**
**centinela**
**centro**

cigarro
cisterna
clase
cliente
coexistente
columna
comandante
comando
combate
cometa
cómico
compatriota
complemento
completo
complexo
componente
compromiso
común
concepto
conciso
concreto
concubina
conducta
conductivo
confidencia
conflicto
congreso
consonante
constante
constructivo
contacto
contento
continente
contrabando
contraste
conveniente
convento
convicto
cooperativo
correcto
costa
credencial
crédito
cresta
criatura

defecto
demanda
democrático
demonio
depósito
despotismo
diadema
diferente
diminutivo
dinamita
directo
discordia
discreto
disputa
distancia
distante
distinto
distrito
divino
do(u)ble
doctrina
documento
domicilio
dramático

edicto
edificio
efectivo
efecto
egoísta
elástico
electivo
electo
eléctrico
elegancia
elegante
emigrante
eminente
época
etiqueta
evidencia
excesivo
exceso
existencia
expansivo
experiencia
experimento
experto
expresivo
exquisito
extensivo
extinto
extracto

falso
famoso
fanático
favorito
femenino
festivo
figura
final
firme
forma
fortuna
fractura
fragante
frágil
fragmento
franco
frecuente
frontera
fruta
futuro

galante
galore
garantía
gasolina
globo
grupo
guarda

humano

idea
idealista
idiota
ídolo
ignorante
ilegal
imbécil
importante
incidente
indiferente
indirecto
individual
indulgente
infante
infinitivo
infrecuente
inherente
inmenso
inmigrante
inminente
insolente
instante
instrumento
insuficiente
insulto
inteligente
intento
intolerante

justicia

kilogramo
kilómetro

límite
línea
lista
lógica
lotería

madama
magnitud
mapa
marcha
margen
marinero
masculino
matrona
mayo
mérito
modelo
moderno
monoplano
monte
moralista
motor
música

narcótico
negligente
noticia
novela
novelista
novicio

obscuro
occidente
océano
ofensivo
orgánico
organismo
órgano
oriental
oriente
original

pacto

**paganismo**
**palacio**
**palma**
**pánico**
**parte**
**patriota**
**patriotismo**
**penitente**
**período**
**persona**
**piloto**
**pistola**
**planeta**
**planta**
**poema**
**poeta**
**portero**
**presidente**
**pretexto**
**problema**
**producto**
**programa**
**prostituta**
**proverbio**
**prudente**
**público**
**pútrido**

**radiante**
**rancho**
**rápido**
**rata**
**realista**
**reforma**
**relativo**
**renta**
**república**
**reserva**
**residente**
**respeto**
**restaurante**
**resto**
**resulta**
**rollo**
**romántico**

**sacramento**
**sarcasmo**
**secreto**
**secta**
**sereno**
**severo**
**sexo**
**sincero**
**símbolo**
**socialista**
**solemne**
**suma**
**sólido**
**suficiente**
**supremo**

**tacto**
**talento**
**teléfono**
**telegrama**
**temperatura**
**texto**
**tímido**
**tolerante**
**tomate**
**tormento**
**tráfico**
**tranquilo**
**transparente**
**triunfo**
**trópico**
**trote**
**tubo**
**tumulto**
**turbulento**
**turno**

**uniforme**
**union**

**válido**
**valiente**
**verbo**
**verso**
**víctima**
**violencia**
**violeta**
**violinista**
**vista**
**volcán**

**zona**

The following list of words ending in "**tad**" or "**dad**" in Spanish are feminine and end in "ty" in English. They are of the neuter gender in English.

**absurdidad**
**aceptabilidad**
**actividad**
**actualidad**
**adaptabilidad**
**adversidad**
**afabilidad**
**afinidad**
**agilidad**
**alterabilidad**
**ambigüedad**
**amabilidad**
**amenidad**
**anabilidad**
**animosidad**
**ansiedad**
**anterioridad**
**antigüedad**
**atrocidad**
**austeridad**
**autenticidad**
**autoridad**

**barbaridad**
**brevedad**
**brutalidad**

**calamidad**
**calidad**
**cantidad**
**capacidad**
**caridad**
**casualidad**
**cavidad**
**civilidad**
**claridad**
**comodidad**
**compatibilidad**
**complicidad**
**comunidad**
**conformidad**
**continuidad**
**cristiandad**
**crueldad**
**curiosidad**

**debilidad**
**densidad**
**dificultad**
**dignidad**
**divinidad**
**durabilidad**

**elasticidad**
**electricidad**
**entidad**
**especialidad**
**esterilidad**
**eternidad**
**eventualidad**
**extremidad**

**facilidad**
**facultad**
**falsedad**
**familiaridad**
**fatalidad**
**fecundidad**
**felicidad**
**ferocidad**
**fertilidad**
**fidelidad**
**flexibilidad**
**formalidad**
**fragilidad**

**generalidad**
**generosidad**
**gravedad**

**habilidad**
**honestidad**
**humanidad**

**identidad**
**igualdad**

imposibilidad
incredulidad
individualidad
infinidad
informalidad
ingenuidad
iniquidad
inmensidad
inmoralidad
inmunidad
integridad
intensidad
irregularidad

liberalidad
libertad
localidad

maternidad
majestad

moralidad
multiplicidad

nacionalidad
natividad
necesidad
neutralidad

obscuridad
oportunidad

paternidad
peculiaridad
personalidad
perversidad
piedad
pluralidad
popularidad
porosidad
posibilidad

posteridad
prioridad
probidad
probabilidad
profundidad
prosperidad
proximidad
puntualidad

raridad
realidad
receptabilidad
regularidad
removibilidad
responsabilidad

sagacidad
seguridad
sensibilidad
serenidad

severidad
simplicidad
sinceridad
singularidad
sociedad
solemnidad
solidaridad
suavidad
superioridad

temeridad
totalidad
tranquilidad

universidad
utilidad

variedad
velocidad

The following list of words ending in "**ción**" in Spanish end in "tion" in English and mean the same thing in at least one definition:

abducción
absolución
abstaracción
aceptación
acción
acumulación
acusación
administración
admiración
adoración
adulteración
adquisición
adulación
afección
agitación
agregación
alternación
ambición
amputación
animación
anticipación
aplicación
aposición
apropiación
arbitración
argumentación
articulación

aserción
asimilación
asociación
aspiración
atención
atracción
aumentación
autorización
aviación

calificación
capitalización
capitulación
celebración
certificación
circulación
civilización
clasificación
colaboración
colección
colonización
combinación
comparación
compensación
competición
complicación
composición

comunicación
concentración
concepción
conciliación
condenación
condición
confección
confederación
confirmación
conflagración
congratulación
congregación
conjugación
conjunción
conmoción
conservación
consideración
constelación
constitución
construcción
contaminación
contemplación
contención
continuación
contracción
contradicción
contribución

convención
conversación
convicción
convocación
cooperación
coordinación
corporación
corrección
corrupción
creación
cristalización
cultivación

declamación
declaración
decoración
dedificación
definición
degeneración
deliberación
demostración
denominación
deportación
deposición
depreciación
derivación
descripción

**deserción**
**designación**
**destitución**
**destrucción**
**detención**
**determinación**
**detonación**
**devastación**
**devoción**
**dirección**
**discreción**
**disipación**
**disolución**
**disposición**
**distinción**
**distracción**
**distribución**
**dominación**
**duración**

**edición**
**educación**
**ejecución**
**elección**
**elevación**
**elocución**
**emancipación**
**emigración**
**emoción**
**enumeración**
**equivocación**
**erudición**
**erupción**
**estación**
**estimación**
**estrangulación**
**evacuación**
**evaporación**
**evicción**
**evolución**
**exageración**
**exaltación**
**excavación**
**excepción**
**exclamación**
**exhibición**
**expedición**
**expiración**
**exploración**
**explotación**
**exportación**
**exposición**
**extracción**
**extradición**

**fabricación**
**facción**
**fascinación**
**federación**
**ficción**
**formación**
**fortificación**
**fricción**
**fumigación**
**función**

**generación**
**generalización**
**glorificación**
**graduación**

**habitación**

**identificación**
**iluminación**
**ilustración**
**imaginación**
**imitación**
**imperfección**
**imploración**
**importación**
**imposición**
**inauguración**
**inclinación**
**indicación**
**indignación**
**infección**
**información**
**infracción**
**iniciación**
**inmigración**
**inscripción**
**insinuación**
**inspección**
**inspiración**
**instigación**
**institución**
**instrucción**
**insurrección**
**intención**
**interjección**
**interpretación**
**interrogación**
**intervención**
**introducción**
**invención**
**investigación**
**invitación**

**jurisdicción**

**lamentación**
**legación**
**legalización**
**legislación**
**liberación**
**limitación**
**lubricación**

**mancipación**
**manifestación**
**manipulación**
**mediación**
**meditación**
**mención**
**mitigación**
**moción**
**moderación**
**modificación**
**mortificación**
**multiplicación**
**munición**

**nación**
**narración**
**natación**
**naturalización**
**navegación**
**negación**
**negociación**
**noción**
**nominación**
**notación**
**notificación**
**numeración**
**nutrición**

**objeción**
**obligación**
**observación**
**obstrucción**
**ocupación**
**operación**
**oposición**
**oración**
**orientación**
**organización**
**oscilación**
**osificación**
**ostentación**
**ovación**
**oxidación**

**palpitación**
**participación**
**penetración**
**percepción**
**perfección**
**perforación**
**persecución**
**petición**
**porción**
**posición**
**precaución**
**precipitación**
**predicción**
**predilección**
**predisposición**
**premeditación**
**preocupación**
**preparación**
**preposición**
**presentación**
**preservación**
**presunción**
**prevaricación**
**prevención**
**privación**
**probación**
**proclamación**
**producción**
**prohibición**
**prolongación**
**promoción**
**promulgación**
**pronunciación**
**proporción**
**proposición**
**prosecución**
**prostitución**
**protección**
**provocación**
**publicación**
**pulverización**
**puntuación**
**purificación**

**ración**
**radiación**
**ratificación**
**reacción**
**realización**

**recapitulación**
**recepción**
**reciprocación**
**recitación**
**reclamación**
**recomendación**
**reconciliación**
**recreación**
**rectificación**
**reducción**
**reelección**
**refracción**
**refrigeración**
**rehabilitación**
**relación**
**relegación**
**remuneración**
**rendición**
**renovación**
**renunciación**
**reorganización**
**reparación**
**repetición**
**representación**
**reproducción**
**repudiación**
**reputación**
**requisición**
**reservación**
**resignación**
**resolución**
**respiración**
**restauración**
**resurrección**
**retención**
**revelación**
**reverberación**
**revolución**
**rotación**

**salutación**
**salvación**
**sanción**
**satisfacción**
**saturación**
**sección**
**selección**
**sensación**
**separación**
**significación**
**simplificación**
**simulación**
**situación**
**solidificación**
**solución**
**subscripción**
**suposición**
**substitución**

**terminación**
**testificación**
**tracción**
**tradición**
**transacción**
**transición**
**translación**
**transmigración**
**transportación**
**transposición**

**vacilación**
**vaporación**
**variación**
**vegetación**
**ventilación**
**vibración**
**vindicación**
**visitación**
**violación**
**vocación**
**vociferación**

In the following list of words the Spanish "io" and "ia" end in "y" in English. In a few of the words listed below there is a slight change in spelling. In some instances, shown with parentheses, the English letter is omitted in the Spanish word:

**academia**
**accesorio**
**adulterio**
**adversario**
**agencia**
**agonía**
**analogía**
**aniversario**
**antropología**
**arbitrario**
**armonía**
**arteria**
**artillería**
**auditorio**

**batería**
**blasfemia**

**calvario**
**canario**
**categoría**
**centenario**
**ceremonia**
**colonia**
**comedia**
**comentario**
**comisario**
**compañía**
**constancia**
**contrario**
**copia**
**coquetería**
**cortesía**

**depositario**
**dinastía**
**diplomacia**
**directorio**
**disentería**
**dormitorio**

**economía**
**energía**
**estudio**
**extraordinario**

**farmacia**
**familia**
**fantasía**
**frecuencia**
**func(t)ionario**
**furia**

**galantería**
**galería**
**geografía**
**gloria**

**idolatría**
**industria**
**infamia**
**infancia**
**injuria**

**laboratorio**
**matrimonio**
**melodía**
**memoria**
**mercurio**
**ministerio**
**miseria**
**modestia**
**monasterio**
**monopolio**

**observatorio**
**oratorio**
**ordinario**
**orgía**

**patrimonio**
**pedagogía**
**perfidia**
**perfumería**
**plenipotenciario**
**prodigio**

**promontorio**
**purgatorio**

**remedio**
**rosario**
**salario**
**san(c)tuario**
**satisfactoria**
**secretario**
**seminario**
**sociología**
**sumario**

**territorio**
**testimonio**
**tirania**
**tragedia**

**victoria**
**voluntario**

## Drop the infinitive ending in Spanish for the English verb:

**abandonar**
**absorber**
**abundar**
**aceptar**
**aclamar**
**acordar**
**acreditar**
**adaptar**
**administrar**
**adoptar**
**adornar**
**aducir**
**afectar**
**afirmar**
**alarmar**
**alterar**
**anexar**
**anular**
**apelar**
**aplaudir**
**aprehender**
**aprisionar**
**armar**
**arrestar**
**asaltar**
**ascender**
**asentir**
**asignar**
**atacar**
**atender**

**balancear**
**batallar**

**calmar**
**cancelar**
**combatir**
**comentar**
**comisionar**
**concernir**
**concurrir**
**conducir**
**conferir**
**confesar**
**confirmar**
**conformar**
**confrontar**
**consentir**
**considerar**
**consignar**
**consistir**
**consultar**
**contar**
**contender**
**contentar**
**contrastar**
**convertir**
**corresponder**
**costar**

**debutar**
**defender**
**deferir**
**defraudar**
**demandar**
**departir**
**depender**
**deportar**
**depositar**
**desarmar**
**descender**
**descontar**
**desembarcar**
**desistir**
**despachar**
**destilar**
**detallar**
**detestar**
**divorciar**

**embarcar**
**emitir**
**enamorar**
**engendrar**
**entrar**
**estampar**
**exaltar**
**exclamar**
**exhortar**
**existir**
**expeler**
**experimentar**
**exportar**
**expresar**
**extender**

**filtrar**
**fomentar**
**frecuentar**
**func(t)ionar**
**fundar**

**guardar**

**honrar**

**importar**
**incurrir**
**inferir**
**informar**
**insertar**
**insistir**
**inspeccionar**
**instalar**
**insultar**
**interesar**
**internar**

**laborar**
**lamentar**
**limitar**

**manifestar**
**marcar**
**marchar**
**molestar**
**murmurar**

**ocasionar**
**ocurrir**
**ofender**
**omitir**

**partir**
**pasar**
**perdonar**
**permitir**
**persistir**
**perturbar**
**ponderar**
**preferir**
**presentar**
**preservar**
**pretender**
**proclamar**
**profesar**
**prolongar**
**proporcionar**
**prosperar**
**protestar**
**proyectar**

**razonar**
**reclamar**
**recordar**
**referir**
**reformar**
**refrenar**
**registrar**
**remitir**
**repetir**
**rescindir**
**responder**
**representar**
**resignar**
**resistir**
**respetar**
**retardar**
**robar**

**salvar**

**sanc(t)ionar**
**solicitar**
**soportar**
**subsisitir**
**sucumbir**
**sufrir**
**sumar**
**suspender**

**telefonear**
**tostar**
**transformar**
**transmitir**
**transportar**
**triunfar**
**usurpar**

**vender**
**visitar**
**vomitar**

In this list of words the Spanish infinitive is replaced by a silent "e" in English. Some of these words have slight changes in spelling. English double letters are single in Spanish. Soft "c" before "a" or "o" is changed to "z". The "dv" combination in many English words changes to "v" in Spanish.

**abjurar**
**absolver**
**abusar**
**acceder**
**acreditar**
**acusar**
**admirar**
**adorar**
**adherir**
**adquirir**
**aludir**
**analizar**
**aprobar**
**argüir**
**aspirar**
**asumir**
**autorizar**
**avanzar**
**a(d)vanzar**
**aventurar**
**a(d)venturar**
**a(d)visar**

**basar**

**capitalizar**
**capturar**
**caracterizar**
**carbonizar**
**causar**
**censurar**
**citar**
**civilizar**
**coincidir**
**combinar**
**comenzar**
**comparar**
**competir**
**completar**
**computar**
**conceder**
**condensar**
**confinar**
**conjurar**
**consolar**
**conspirar**
**consumir**
**continuar**
**convencer**
**conversar**
**curar**

**danzar**
**datar**
**decidir**
**declarar**
**declinar**
**deducir**
**definir**
**defraudar**
**denotar**
**denunciar**
**deplorar**
**depravar**
**describir**
**desfigurar**
**desolver**
**destinar**
**determinar**
**dilatar**
**dispensar**
**dispersar**
**dividir**
**divulgar**
**do(u)blar**

**economizar**
**eclipsar**
**eludir**
**equipar**
**escalar**
**escandalizar**
**escapar(se)**
**evadir**
**evocar**
**examinar**
**exceder**
**excitar**
**excusar**
**exhalar**
**expirar**
**explorar**
**explusar**

**fatigar**
**figurar**
**fingir**
**forzar**
**fracturar**

**ignorar**
**imaginar**
**impedir**
**implorar**
**improvisar**
**incitar**
**inclinar**
**inducir**
**inflamar**
**inquirir**
**inspirar**
**intervenir**
**introducir**
**invadir**
**invitar**
**invocar**
**mover**

**notar**

**obligar**
**observar**
**opinar**
**organizar**

**paralizar**
**perfumar**
**persuadir**
**practicar**
**preparar**
**preseverar**
**presidir**
**presumir**
**procurar**
**producir**
**profanar**
**prolongar**
**pronunciar**
**proscribir**
**provocar**
**pulverizar**

**realizar**
**recibir**
**reclinar**
**recompensar**
**redo(u)blar**
**reducir**
**refinar**
**relatar**
**remover**
**renunciar**
**reparar**
**repasar**
**reposar**

122

**reproducir**
**reservar**
**residir**
**resolver**
**respirar**
**resumir**
**retirar**
**revocar**
**revolver**

**saludar**
**seducir**
**sentenciar**
**separar**
**servir**
**subscribir**

**tranquilizar**
**tributar**

**usar**
**utilizar**

**votar**

The following verbs end in "ar" in Spanish and in "ate" in English:

**abdicar**
**abreviar**
**abrogar**
**acelerar**
**acentuar**
**acomodar**
**actuar**
**acumular**
**adulterar**
**agitar**
**aglomerar**
**agravar**
**agregar**
**aliviar**
**alternar**
**amputar**
**animar**
**anotar**
**anticipar**
**apreciar**
**aprop(r)iar**
**arbitrar**
**articular**
**asesinar**

**calcular**
**calumniar**
**castigar**
**celebrar**
**circular**
**complicar**
**comunicar**
**concentrar**
**conciliar**
**confiscar**
**congratular**
**congregar**
**conjugar**
**conmemorar**
**consolidar**
**consumar**
**contaminar**
**contemplar**
**cooperar**
**coordinar**
**crear**
**cultivar**

**debilitar**
**decorar**
**dedicar**
**degenerar**
**delegar**
**deliberar**
**demo(n)strar**
**denominar**
**depredar**
**designar**
**desolar**
**devastar**
**dictar**
**diferenciar**
**dilatar**
**disimular**
**disipar**
**dislocar**
**dominar**
**donar**
**duplicar**

**educar**
**elevar**
**emanar**
**emancipar**
**emigrar**
**enumerar**
**enunciar**
**especificar**
**estimar**
**evacuar**
**exagerar**
**excavar**
**exterminar**

**facilitar**
**fascinar**
**felicitar**
**formular**
**fluctuar**

**graduar**
**granular**

**habilitar**
**habitar**
**habituar**

**iluminar**
**ilustrar**
**implicar**
**inaugurar**
**incorporar**
**indicar**
**iniciar**
**inocular**
**insinuar**
**instigar**
**interrogar**
**intimar**
**invalidar**
**investigar**
**irritar**

**libertar**
**lubricar**

**manipular**
**mediar**
**meditar**
**mitigar**
**moderar**
**modular**
**motivar**
**mutilar**

**narrar**
**navegar**
**necesitar**
**negociar**
**nominar**

**obligar**
**oficiar**
**operar**
**orientar**
**originar**
**oscilar**

**palpitar**
**participar**
**penetrar**
**perpetuar**
**precipitar**
**predominar**
**premeditar**
**promulgar**
**propagar**
**pun(c)tuar**

**radiar**
**reanimar**
**recapitular**
**reciprocar**
**recrear**
**refrigerar**
**regenerar**
**remunerar**
**renovar**
**renunciar**
**resucitar**

**saturar**
**separar**
**simular**
**situar**
**sofocar**

3

**subyugar**
**suplicar**

**terminar**
**tolerar**
**transmigrar**

**ulcerar**
**vacilar**
**vegetar**
**venerar**
**ventilar**
**vibrar**
**vindicar**
**violar**
**vociferar**

Below is given a list of words that are spelled alike, or almost alike, in Spanish and English and mean the same thing in at least one acceptation:

**abdomen**
**abominable**
**abrasión**
**accesible**
**accidental**
**acre**
**actor**
**actual**
**admirable**
**adobe**
**adorable**
**adverbial**
**agresión**
**álbum**
**álcali**
**alcohol**
**alfalfa**
**altar**
**alusión**
**aluvial**
**amén**
**ángel**
**angular**
**animal**
**antena**
**anterior**
**anual**
**apendicitis**
**aplicable**
**área**
**arena**
**armada**
**artificial**
**ascensión**
**atlas**
**audible**
**auto**
**automóvil**
**aversión**
**axioma**

**balance**
**bulevar**
**bonanza**
**brutal**
**billón**

**cable**
**calibre**
**calicó**
**calomel**
**canal**
**cáncer**
**candor**
**caníbal**
**cañón**
**canon**
**capital**
**cardinal**
**carnal**
**cartel**
**casual**
**celestial**
**censor**
**central**
**cereal**
**chocolate**
**circular**
**civil**
**clamor**
**clerical**
**clímax**
**colisión**
**colonial**
**color**
**comercial**
**comisión**
**comparable**
**compulsión**
**concesión**
**conclusión**
**cóndor**
**confesión**
**confusión**
**considerable**
**cónsul**
**consular**
**continental**
**convoy**
**corral**
**cordial**
**corporal**
**coyote**
**cráter**
**criminal**
**crisis**
**cristal**
**cruel**
**cuestión**
**culpable**
**curable**
**champaña**
**charlatán**
**chasis**

**deán**
**debate**
**decimal**
**decisión**
**déficit**
**depresión**
**derivable**
**detestable**
**detector**
**diagnosis**
**difusión**
**digestible**
**digestión**
**dimensión**
**director**
**dirigible**
**diván**
**diversión**
**división**
**doctor**
**dogma**
**dorsal**
**dragón**
**drama**
**eczema**
**editorial**
**elector**
**electorial**
**elemental**
**era**
**error**
**especial**
**estimable**
**etcétera**
**evasión**
**excursión**
**experimental**
**explosión**
**expresión**
**expulsión**
**extensión**
**exterior**

**facial**
**factor**
**familiar**
**fatal**
**favor**
**favorable**
**federal**
**felón**
**fértil**
**fervor**
**fiasco**
**filial**
**final**
**flexible**
**formal**
**formidable**
**fórmula**
**fraternal**
**fundamental**
**funeral**

**galón**
**gas**
**general**

genial
glacial
gonorrea
gorila
gradual
gratis
guardián

habitual
hangar
honor
horrible
horizontal
horror
hospital
hotel
humor

idea
ideal
ilusión
imaginable
imitable
imperceptible
imperial
impersonal
implacable
imposible
impresión
incomparable
incompatible
incomprehensible
incurable
indigestion
indispensable
indisputable
individual
indivisible
industrial
inestimable
inevitable
infalible
inferior
infernal
inflamable
informal
inimitable
innumerable
insensible
inseparable
inspector
instructor
instrumental
integral
intelectual
inteligible
interior
interminable
intolerable
intrusión
invariable
invasión
inventor
invisible
irregular
irremediable
irresistible

jovial
judicial

kodak

labor
lamentable
lateral
latín
laudable
laurel
legal
legion
liberal
local
lustre

magnate
magneto
maíz
mamá
mansión
manual
marginal
marital
maternal
melón
memorable
memorial
mental
metal
mineral
miserable
misión
moral
mormón
mortal
mosquito
motor
mulato
múltiple
municipal
mural
musical

natal
natural
naval
negociable
negro
neuralgia
neutral
no
noble
nominal
normal
notable
numeral

oasis
ocasión
occidental
omisión
oficial
ómnibus
ópera
opinión
ordinal
oriental
oral
origen
original
ornamental

panorama
par
particular
pasión
pastoral
paternal
peculiar
pedestal
penal
península
peninsular
pensión
peón
perfume
perpendicular
personal
piano
pistón
placer
plan
plural
polar
popular
portal
posible
postal
posterior
practicable
preceptor
precisión
prior
probable
profesional
promotor
propaganda
provincial
provisional
provisión
pulmotor
pus

radial
radiar
radical
radio
rebelión
región
regular
religión
remediable
reparable
repulsión
resistible
reversible
revisión
revocable
revólver
rifle
rigor
ritual
romance
rufián
rumor
rural

salón
secular

**sensible**
**sentimental**
**separable**
**sexual**
**similar**
**simple**
**singular**
**sentimental**
**social**
**sofá**
**soluble**
**suave**
**sublime**
**sultán**
**superficial**
**superior**
**suspensión**

**tango**
**temporal**
**tenis**
**tenor**
**tensión**
**terrible**
**terror**
**tolerable**
**total**
**tractor**
**transferible**
**tribunal**
**trío**
**triple**
**trivial**
**tropical**
**tumor**
**tutor**

**unión**
**universal**
**usual**

**vapor**
**variable**
**venerable**
**verbal**
**versión**
**viceversa**
**vigor**
**violín**
**virginal**
**virtual**
**visible**
**visión**
**visual**
**vital**
**vocal**

The following list of words ending in "ista" in Spanish refers to one who is of that occupation or member of the group.

The word is masculine or feminine according to the gender of the person.

**absolutista**
**adornista**
**agrarista**
**alarmista**
**alienista**
**alquimista**
**analista**
**anarquista**
**antagonista**
**archivista**
**artista**
**automovilista**

**bañista**
**bautista**
**biciclista**
**bimetalista**
**bolchevista**

**capitalista**
**comunista**
**comisionista**
**comisionista**
**conformista**
**contrabandista**

**dentista**
**duelista**
**economista**
**electricista**

**fatalista**

**huelgüista**

**idealista**

**maquinista**
**moralista**
**motorista**
**naturalista**
**novelista**

**oculista**

**pianista**
**protagonista**

**realista**

**socialista**

**violinista**

## STATES OF MEXICO AND THEIR ABBREVIATIONS

**Aguascalientes—Ags.**
**Baja California—B. C.**
**Campeche—Camp.**
**Chiapas—Chis.**
**Chihuahua—Chih.**
**Coahuila—Coah.**
**Colima—Col.**
**Distrito Federal—D. F.**
**Durango—Dgo.**
**Guanajuato—Gto.**
**Guerrero—Gro.**
**Hidalgo—Hgo.**
**Jalisco—Jal.**
**México—Mex.**
**Michoacán—Mich.**
**Morelos—Mor.**
**Nayarit—Nay.**
**Nuevo León—N. L.**
**Oaxaca—Oax.**
**Puebla—Pueb.**
**Querétaro—Qto.**
**Quintana Roo (no abbreviation)**
**San Luis Potosí—S. L. P.**
**Sinaloa—Sin.**
**Sonora—Son.**
**Tabasco—Tab.**
**Tamaulipas—Tamps.**
**Tlaxcala—Tlax.**
**Veracruz—Ver.**
**Yucatán—Yuc.**
**Zacatecas—Zac.**

## OCCUPATIONS

agent—**agente**
artist—**artista**
aviator—**aviador**
ballplayer—**pelotero**
barber—**peluquero**
**barbero**
blacksmith—**herrero**
bookkeeper—**tenedor de libros**
book seller—**librero**
bootblack—**limpiabotas, bolero**
butcher—**carnicero**
carpenter—**carpintero**
cattleman—**ganadero**
chauffeur—**chofer, chófer**
chicken raiser—**gallinero**
clerk—**dependiente**
conductor—**conductor**
constable—**alguacil**
cook—**cocinero**
cotton grower—**algodonero**
cowboy—**vaquero**
customs agent—**agente de aduana**
**aduanero**
dairyman—**lechero**
dancer—**bailador**
**bailarina**
dentist—**dentista**
director—**director**
doctor—**doctor**
**médico**
driver—**muletero (horses)**
**cochero (coach)**
druggist—**boticario**
**droguista**
**droguero**
engineer—**ingeniero**
farmer—**hacendado**
**agricultor**
fisherman—**pescador**
gardener—**jardinero**
goatherd—**chivero**
**cabrero**
guide—**guía**
harvester—**cosechero**
hatmaker—**sombrerero**
inventor—**inventor**
irrigator—**regador**
jeweler—**joyero**
laborer—**jornalero, bracero**
**trabajador**
**labrador**
lawyer—**abogado**
**licenciado**
machinist—**maquinista**
mailcarrier—**cartero**
manufacturer—**fabricante**
mason—**albañil**
merchant—**comerciante**
mechanic—**mecánico**
midwife—**partera**
miller—**molinero**
miner—**minero**
musician—**músico**
nurse—**enfermera**
obstetrician—**partero**
official—**oficial**
painter—**pintor**
peddler—**comerciante ambulante**
**buhonero**
picker (cotton)—**pizcador**
pilot—**piloto**
pimp—**palo blanco**
**alcahuete**
plasterer—**emplastador**
plumber—**plomero**
planter—**plantador**
**sembrador**
porter—**portero**
**cargador**
priest—**cura, padre**
promoter—**promotor**
rancher—**ranchero**
sailor—**marinero**
seller—**vendedor**
servant—**mozo**
**sirviente**
**criado**
seamstress—**costurera**
sharecropper—**mediero**
shepherd—**pastor**
**borreguero**
sheriff—**alguacil**
**policia**
shoemaker—**zapatero**
shoplifter—**ratero de tienda**
smuggler—**contrabandista**
soldier—**soldado**
stenographer—**taquígrafo**
surgeon—**cirujano**
swineherd—**porquero**
tailor—**sastre**

teacher—**profesor**
**maestro**
tinsmith—**hojalatero**
usher—**conserje, acomodador**
valet—**camarero**
waiter—**mozo, mesero**
washerwoman—**lavandera**
watchmaker—**relojero**
wet nurse—**nodriza**
woodchopper—**leñero**
worker—**trabajador**
**obrero**

---

## Appendix

## ACCEPTABLE TRANSLATIONS FOR EXERCISES CONTAINED IN THE TEXT

### LESSON V

1. **El muchacho compra un lápiz.**
2. **¿Vive ella en El Paso?**
3. **Nosotros estudiamos mucho.**
4. **¿Escribimos nosotros las lecciones cada día?**
5. **¿Trabaja él hoy?**
6. **¿Toma él el autobús mañana?**
7. **Alberto lleva el libro a su cuarto.**
8. **Yo siempre tomo un taxi.**
9. **¿Vende Vd. estos pasaportes?**
10. **Él y Pepe ganan bastante dinero.**
11. **Luis y María no ganan mucho dinero.**
12. **Nosotros no hablamos español.**
13. **Él saca su visa hoy.**
14. **¿Sacan Vds. un pasaporte cada año?**
15. **Simón llega temprano cada día.**
16. **Nosotros nunca cruzamos ilegalmente.**
17. **¿Maneja Vd. el carro de su patrón?**
18. **Ellos esperan el tren.**
19. **Él no toma mucha agua.**
20. **Ellas trabajan mucho.**
21. **¿Debe esta señora mucho dinero?**
22. **¿Venden ellos estas tarjetas falsas en México?**
23. **La madre del muchacho pasa por esta ciudad cada mes.**
24. **La enfermera de ese doctor vive en aquella casa azul.**
25. **¿Compran esos abogados estos dos carros?**

### LESSON VI

1. **¿Qué hace Vd. con este documento?**
2. **¿La tarjeta de quién tiene Vd.?**
3. **¿Quién tiene la fe de bautismo de Vd.?**

4. ¿Traen Vds. su certificado de nacimiento?
5. ¿Qué clase de papeles legales tiene Vd.?
6. ¿Cuántos parientes tiene Vd.?
7. ¿Qué trae Vd.?
8. ¿Tiene Vd. cortadas o lunares?
9. Sí señor, yo tengo una cortada en la mano derecha.
10. Una semana tiene siete días.
11. ¿Va ella con nosotros la semana que viene?
12. Yo no tengo los documentos de mi hermano.
13. Este hombre tiene mis cosas.
14. Esta muchacha viene y va cada día.
15. ¿Tiene ella esposo?
16. ¿Por qué quiere Vd. una visa?
17. El mayordomo pide ayuda.
18. Estos hombres no saben nada.
19. Manuel no sabe el nombre del oficial.
20. ¿Por qué pierde Vd. su ciudadanía el año que viene?
21. ¿Obtienen los padres de Vd. visas cada año?
22. ¿Por qué miente Vd. siempre?
23. Ellos no entienden el problema.
24. Esta gente quiere visas nuevas, porque entienden las leyes de los Estados Unidos.
25. La señora Silva sabe las lecciones de español muy bien.

## LESSON VII

1. ¿Es Vd. ciudadano mexicano?
2. ¿En dónde están los papeles de Vd.?
3. Esta casa es muy grande.
4. ¿Quién es el presidente de México?
5. ¿En dónde trabaja Rogelio ahora?
6. Ellos siempre están enfermos?
7. La señorita García no es bonita, porque ella es muy vieja.
8. El sobrino de Vd. es de México, pero ¿qué hace él aquí?
9. Sí señor, ellos son de Puebla.
10. Estos son los pantalones de Pedro.
11. La señorita Cabaza no es muy alta.
12. Nuestros papeles están mojados.
13. Este muchacho es el hijo de esa mujer.
14. Mi padre y mi hermano están en California, pero ellos son de México.
15. Vd. está mintiendo ahorita.
16. El cuñado del hombre no está aquí.
17. ¿Qué tan lejos está la tienda de la casa de Vd.?

18. Vd. no está diciendo la verdad.
19. ¿Cuánto gana Vd. por mes?
20. ¿Qué hora es?
21. ¿Cuánto vale la camioneta de Vd.?
22. Mi primo es de México, y él está trabajando en una fábrica allá.
23. Hoy es sábado, y nosotros vamos al pueblo esta noche.
24. El señor Moreno es un buen trabajador, pero siempre está enfermo.
25. ¿De qué color es el saco nuevo de Vd.?

### LESSON VIII

1. Hay un libro en la mesa.
2. ¿Tiene Vd. mucho sueño?
3. ¿Por qué ha mentido Vd.?
4. Hay doce sillas en el cuarto.
5. ¿Cómo está su esposa?
6. Yo no he visto a ese hombre antes.
7. ¿En dónde está la carta? ¡Allí está!
8. Nosotros hemos traído nuestros documentos hoy.
9. Nosotros no hemos abierto la puerta.
10. El amigo de él no tiene dinero.
11. ¿Ha visto él la cicatriz de Pedro?
12. ¿Ha cruzado el padre de Vd. la línea antes?
13. Yo he llevado el carro al pueblo.
14. ¿Qué ha hecho Vd. hoy?
15. Ellos han ido al pueblo varias veces.
16. ¿Hay hombres en ese rancho?
17. Él no ha dicho la verdad.
18. El abogado ha vendido papeles falsos antes.
19. Alguien ha puesto la tinta en la mesa.
20. El extranjero ha vuelto a los Estados Unidos ilegalmente.
21. ¿Ha estado Vd. en Chicago alguna vez?
22. ¿Cuántas veces ha vuelto Vd. a este país?
23. ¿Tiene el patrón de Vd. un avión verde?
24. Él tiene mucho cuidado cuando cruza la calle.
25. Yo tengo mucha hambre y mucha sed, porque no he comido nada por mucho tiempo.

### LESSON IX

#### Exercise No. 1

1. Josefa tiene mis papeles legales. Ella los trae en su bolsillo.
2. Nosotros hemos comprado papeles falsos antes. Los hemos comprado allí.

3. Él no ha visto la pistola de Vd. ¿La trae Vd.?
4. ¿En dónde compran Vds. estos documentos? Nosotros los compramos en el otro lado.
5. Nosotros compramos nuestra comida en esa tienda. No es muy cara allí.
6. Miguel vende su casa. La vende barata.
7. ¿Entiende Vd. las reglas? Sí, ya las he aprendido.
8. Yo tengo las armas en casa. Mi esposa ya las ha visto.
9. Él ha cruzado el río antes. Lo cruza cada semana.
10. ¿Ha visto Vd. a Felipe? No, no lo he visto todavía.
11. He traído a mi familia de México. ¿Por qué los ha traído Vd. aquí ilegalmente?
12. Los oficiales han arrestado a estos extranjeros antes. También los han deportado antes.
13. ¿Pasa Vd. extranjeros de contrabando? ¿Cómo los pasa de contrabando?
14. ¿Han visto Vds. a mi esposa? Sí, la vemos en la tienda de vez en cuando.
15. Vemos a Gabriel y a su hermana cada semana. Los vemos en la iglesia cada domingo.
16. Timoteo visita a sus abuelos muy seguido (a menudo). Los visita una vez por semana.
17. Los oficiales buscan a Eduardo y a Pancho. Los buscan porque están aquí ilegalmente.
18. ¿Lo conoce él a Vd. muy bien? No, él no me conoce muy bien.
19. ¿Ha pagado Vd. la cuenta? Sí, ya la he pagado.
20. ¿Por qué no ha llevado estos documentos a la Oficina de Inmigración? No los he llevado porque no sé en donde está.

## LESSON IX

### Exercise No. 2

1. Él me está dando su nombre correcto.
2. Ella nos lee el periódico.
3. ¿Le ha escrito Vd. a Mary esta semana?
4. Nosotros le estamos comprando los cintos al señor Jones.
5. Osvaldo le vende su bicicleta a Pepe.
6. ¿Le ha pedido Vd. dinero?
7. ¿No le han pedido Vds. al consul un permiso?
8. ¿Por qué no le pide prestado el radio a Martín?
9. Él le está pidiendo prestados cinco dólares a su cuñada.
10. Él le ha robado muchas cosas a ese comerciante.
11. ¿Le ha robado algo él a Vd.?
12. Él le está diciendo la verdad al oficial.

13. **Ella no nos ha da dado los pasaportes.**
14. **Les estoy pidiendo más información tocante a sus compañeros.**
15. **Él le está comprando el ganado al señor Aguilar.**
16. **Ella le está dando el pasaporte a Consuelo.**
17. **Ellos le han dado al oficial mucha información.**
18. **¿Les ha ayudado Vd. a esos extranjeros antes?**
19. **Él nunca nos ha ayudado antes.**
20. **¿Le ha pagado Vd. al zapatero la cuenta?**

## LESSON IX

### Exercise No. 3

1. **¿Por qué nos lo está enseñando?**
2. **Nosotros se los estamos mandando.**
3. **Andrés nos la ha pedido.**
4. **Guillermo me las está pagando ahora.**
5. **Nosotros lo hemos cruzado con él muchas veces.**
6. **Él se lo está comprando por diez dólares.**
7. **¿Quién nos la está vendiendo?**
8. **¿Por qué no se las pide?**
9. **Él se lo ha robado al comerciante.**
10. **Ellos ya se lo han dado.**
11. **¿Se la ha mandado Vd. a Susana?**
12. **¿Se lo ha pedido prestado él a la señorita Peña?**
13. **Jaime me lo ha dicho muchas veces.**
14. **Yo ya se lo he comprado al señor Garza.**
15. **¿Quién se las manda?**

## LESSON X

1. **¿Sabe Vd. manejar un tractor?**
2. **¿Va él a trabajar mañana por la mañana?**
3. **Nosotros no podemos ir esta tarde.**
4. **Tenemos que firmar este papel lo más pronto posible.**
5. **¿Saben Vds. leer y escribir?**
6. **¿Ha tratado él de cruzar ilegalmente antes?**
7. **Ella quiere estar con su esposo lo más pronto posible.**
8. **Ellos piensan regresar mañana por la noche.**
9. **¿Acaba de regresar Vd. de México?**
10. **Yo debo pagarle hoy.**
11. **Vd. debe comprárselo.**
12. **Vd. tiene que salir de este lugar ahorita.**
13. **¿Cómo ha podido Antonio hallar trabajo en los Estados Unidos?**

14. **¿Qué va a hacer él esta noche?**
15. **Yo he tratado de hacerlo antes.**
16. **Ellos acaban de entrar, pero no han podido hallar trabajo.**
17. **¿A quién piensa dárselo él?**
18. **Nosotros acabamos de llegar a esta ciudad.**
19. **¿No sabe Vd. que no puede llevarlo con Vd.?**
20. **¿Le ayuda Vd. a pasar extranjeros de contrabando a los Estados Unidos?**
21. **¿Le permiten ver al cónsul sin una cita?**
22. **¿Comienza Jorge a trabajar muy temprano?**
23. **¿Por qué ha dejado de trabajar como enfermera?**
24. **¿Piensa Vd. venir a los Estados Unidos ilegalmente otra vez?**
25. **Él trata de conseguir una visa cada año, pero ellos no le pueden dar una porque él está enfermo.**

## LESSON XI

1. **Enséñeme el camino.**
2. **Espere hasta mañana.**
3. **Ayúdenos a hacer la asignatura.**
4. **No corra tan rápido.**
5. **No cierre la puerta.**
6. **Díganos la verdad.**
7. **Déselo a ellos.**
8. **Llévenos temprano en su carro.**
9. **Páguenos con un cheque.**
10. **Déjeme ver su cartera.**
11. **Súbase al carro.**
12. **No crucen juntos.**
13. **Haga esto primero y luego abra la caja.**
14. **Dígale que su esposo está mintiendo.**
15. **No le pague todavía.**
16. **Vaya a casa y tráiganos esos documentos.**
17. **Venga a la oficina mañana y ayúdeme.**
18. **Tráigame la pluma amarilla de él, por favor.**
18. **Esté aquí temprano mañana.**
20. **Obtenga una visa lo más pronto posible.**

## LESSON XII

1. **Anita no vino de México con su padrastro.**
2. **Simón no me trajo mi maleta.**
3. **¿Cuándo cruzaron Vd. y su hermano a este lado?**
4. **Ella dijo que no le dijo la verdad al oficial.**
5. **¿Cuántos años vivieron sus padres en Sonora?**

6. **Yo no pude hacer el trabajo ayer por la mañana.**
7. **Nosotros no vimos al criminal.**
8. **¿Dejó él su pasaporte con Vd.?**
9. **La mujer le mandó siete dólares a su hija el mes pasado.**
10. **Los papeles legales no le costaron mucho a ella.**
11. **Él me dejó ir porque yo le dije la verdad.**
12. **Ellos salieron de aquí con mi tío hace cinco días.**
13. **¿Por qué dejó Vd. a su esposa en ese lugar?**
14. **Yo no creí lo que él dijo.**
15. **¿Le pidió Vd. dinero?**
16. **Él no quiso darme la navaja cuando se la pedí.**
17. **¿A qué hora supo él?**
18. **¿Cuándo fué la última vez que Vd. vió a este hombre?**
19. **¿Cuándo fué la primera vez que Vd. pasó extranjeros de contrabando?**
20. **¿Les compró Vd. la marijuana a esos comerciantes?**
21. **Yo trabajé en esa fábrica por mucho tiempo.**
22. **¿Cuántas botellas de tequila trajo Vd. de México?**
23. **¿Cuántas millas anduvo Vd. por el desierto?**
24. **¿Qué hizo Vd. cuando llegó a Chicago?**
25. **Él me dijo que vió al señor Moreno ayer.**

## LESSON XIII

1. **¿Por qué lo arrestaron los oficiales?**
2. **Ellos me arrestaron por una ofensa muy pequeña.**
3. **Eliseo tiene una cita para el lunes por la mañana.**
4. **Yo necesito un vaso para leche.**
5. **Él corrió hacia el oeste cuando yo lo ví.**
6. **Ella quiere ir a casa para los días de fiesta.**
7. **El extranjero no entró por la garita.**
8. **Yo le pagué al ranchero cien dólares por la vaca.**
9. **Los mineros fueron a las montañas para buscar plata.**
10. **Él vendió cada uno por cinco centavos.**
11. **Haga estos ejercicios para mañana.**
12. **Él gana muy poco dinero haciendo esta clase de trabajo.**
13. **Después de que salió él del hospital, comenzó a trabajar.**
14. **Yo no he podido hallar a mi familia desde que llegué aquí.**
15. **Ese abogado puede hacer mucho por Vd.**
16. **¿Para qué es esta máquina? Es para escribir cartas.**
17. **Al llegar a la oficina, le llamé por teléfono.**
18. **Marta no puede ir a la tienda sin decirme.**
19. **Vd. no puede andar por el parque solo.**
20. **En vez de decirnos la verdad, ella mintió.**

21. El oficial lo paró porque él empezó a correr.
22. Después de cambiar su mercancía por dinero, él fué al pueblo.
23. Él y sus dos amigos siempre viajan juntos.
24. Voltee a la derecha donde ve la iglesia.
25. Él quebró la botella sin saberlo.

### LESSON XIV

1. Yo ya había comprado la casa cuando ellos llegaron.
2. Había mucho algodón en los campos.
3. ¿Había ido él a la oficina cuando Vd. fué a verlo?
4. Ella no vino por el dinero porque ella había recibido un cheque.
5. Vd. me dijo que había trabajado con él antes.
6. ¿Sabía Vd. que el hombre era contrabandista?
7. ¿Había braceros pizcando algodón?
8. Yo trabajaba con el señor Kent, pero ahora estoy trabajando en un rancho grande.
9. ¿Qué clase de trabajo hacía Vd. antes de venir a los Estados Unidos.
10. Vd. dijo que le había pedido un permiso al inspector para visitar los Estados Unidos.
11. Él dijo que quería venir a San Antonio a trabajar.
12. Cuando yo trabajaba en ese rancho, Enrique estaba allí también.
13. El esposo de ella había estado trabajando en Cotulla por muchos años.
14. Ellos caminaban por el camino cuando yo los arresté.
15. ¿Quién manejaba el troque cuando Vds. iban a California?
16. Ellos pensaban venir a los Estados Unidos, pero no pudieron porque no tenían dinero.
17. ¿Había visto Vd. a este hombre antes?
18. Yo estuve muy enfermo ayer.
19. Había mucha gente sin trabajo cuando yo salí de México.
20. Él le dijo al inspector que él había entrado legalmente.
21. El alumno hacía la lección cuando yo entré en la sala de clase.
22. El tío de él necesitaba otros papeles para sacar un pasaporte.
23. ¿Sabía Vd. localizar la casa de este hombre?
24. ¿Conocía Vd. a Elías cuando Vd. trabajaba allí?
25. Yo le llevaba la marijuana a un hombre quien me iba a pagar mucho dinero.

### LESSON XV

1. ¿En dónde enterró el cuerpo?
2. Micaela nació el trece de febrero de mil novecientos treinta.

3. Ayer fué sábado; hoy es domingo.
4. Nosotros vendimos la última sandía a las diez veinte de la noche.
5. Yo voy de compras cada viernes.
6. Nuestros padres llegaron a las cuatro cuarenta de la tarde el viernes.
7. Ella decidió tomar el tren el martes a las ocho cincuenta y cinco de la mañana.
8. El mayordomo nos pagó a las seis y media de la mañana ayer.
9. Durante el verano salimos para Michigan.
10. ¿Vió Vd. a alguien anoche a las once y media?
11. ¿Qué hace Vd. los domingos?
12. Nosotros no tenemos que estar aquí hasta las doce y media de la tarde.
13. Lo conocí anteayer a mediodía.
14. La última vez que fuí allá fué el lunes, el veinte y siete de mayo de mil novecientos cuarenta y tres.
15. Vámonos, porque ya es muy tarde.
16. Los inspectores van a deportarlo mañana por la mañana.
17. Concha tiene treinta y un años, pero todavía vive con sus padres.
18. Felipe dice que ellos le pagan cada quincena.
19. Él me debe como trescientos cincuenta y un dólares por siete meses de trabajo.
20. Hoy es día de fiesta, y no tenemos que trabajar.
21. Él quiere vernos en el puente esta noche a las diez cuarenta y cinco.
22. ¿A qué hora llega el primo de Vd. aquí?
23. Perdí el primer pasaporte que saqué.
24. Son las doce del día, el treinta de noviembre de mil novecientos sesenta y seis.
25. Cien niños estuvieron enfermos ayer.

## LESSON XVI

### Exercise No. 1

1. Él fué arrestado por la policía en mil novecientos cuarenta y siete.
2. ¿Por qué le dejaron a él en el corralon?
3. Ellos han sido vistos cerca de la frontera.
4. Nosotros hemos estado viviendo en ese lugar por mucho tiempo.
5. Esta casa fué vendida la semana pasada.
6. Fué enviado de aquí el quince de mayo.

7. La estación de tren estaba abierta cuando yo salí.
8. Todas las puertas fueron cerradas por los vientos fuertes.
9. Los muebles nuevos de ellos habían sido sacados del cuarto.
10. ¿A qué hora cierra el banco?
11. Cuando ellos llegaron, las puertas y las ventanas estaban cerradas.
12. Él estaba cansado porque había trabajado toda la noche.
13. Horacio fué mandado al mercado por pan.
14. ¿Sabe Vd. por qué ellos no iban a ser echados a México?
15. Estos edificios fueron acabados el año pasado.

## LESSON XVI

### Exercise No. 2

1. Hacía mucho viento cuando el barco entró en el puerto.
2. Nos gusta ir a la pesca cuando hace sol.
3. El pasaporte de él fué cancelado hace tres semanas.
4. Ella fué encontrada en una casa abandonada hace como cinco horas.
5. Hace cinco años que yo no lo veo (a él).
6. Mario había trabajado en ese taller por ocho o nueve meses.
7. Hace siete días desde mi último día de pago.
8. La cueva estaba muy fría y muy mojada.
9. Le hicimos darnos las drogas que él pasaba de contrabando.
10. Ellos pueden hacernos rendir nuestras tarjetas locales.
11. ¿Vieron Vds. al contrabandista hablar con ellos?
12. Lo vimos tomar cerveza con esa mujer.
13. La fichera no pudo oír venir a su patrón.
14. A esos refugiados no les gusta trabajar en las labores.
15. A ella no le gustó los Estados Unidos, así que ella regresó a su país.
16. A mi nunca me ha gustado su compañía (amistad).
17. ¿Cómo le gustó la película?
18. A Eloísa le gusta comer en ese restaurante.
19. A ella siempre le gusta pedir la misma cosa.
20. A él le faltan nueve días para terminar este curso.

## LESSON XVII

### Exercise No. 1

1. Mañana por la mañana iré al correo.
2. ¿Cuándo irá Vd. al pueblo?
3. Voy a ver a Luís mañana por la mañana.
4. Mañana es día de fiesta, y todas las tiendas estarán cerradas.

5. **Ricardo saldrá de aquí pasado mañana.**
6. **Vd. tendrá que volver lo más pronto posible.**
7. **¿A qué hora abrirán la ventana?**
8. **Él estará aquí como a las nueve.**
9. **¿Estará Vd. en casa esta noche a las seis?**
10. **No, tengo que ir a la iglesia a esa hora, pero estaré allí a las ocho.**
11. **Si Vd. ve al inspector, dígale que iré a su casa esta noche.**
12. **El hombre me dice que él tendrá alguna información acerca de algunos extranjeros.**
13. **Él sabrá que nosotros le estamos mintiendo.**
14. **Un americano les dice a los extranjeros que habrá una buena cosecha este año.**
15. **¿Habrá mucho algodón en las labores este año?**
16. **Él tendrá que vender el maíz lo más pronto posible.**
17. **María me dirá la verdad porque voy a ayudarle a conseguir un pasaporte.**
18. **Ellos piensan ver al mayordomo mañana por la tarde.**
19. **¿Por qué brincarán en ese lugar?**
20. **Los amigos de él tratarán de entrar por la madrugada.**

## LESSON XVII

### Exercise No. 2

1. **¿Dijo Vd. que me daría permiso para ir a la ciudad?**
2. **Le dije que yo lo levantaría temprano.**
3. **Él le compraría al hombre el anillo de oro, pero él no tiene dinero.**
4. **Si él le hace preguntas, ¿le puede decir Vd. la verdad?**
5. **Yo le llamaría por teléfono, pero no sé su número.**
6. **Luis me dijo que él tendría el dinero la semana que viene.**
7. **Ellos nos dijeron que Vd. nos llevaría al pueblo.**
8. **¿Sabía él que podría hacerlo?**
9. **¿Qué haría Vd. durante ese tiempo?**
10. **No fuí a verlo porque él dijo que no estaría allí.**
11. **Yo le habría dado la botella de vino, pero él no estaba allí.**
12. **¿Prometió él que le pagaría a Vd. al fin del mes?**
13. **Él nos dijo que no vendría a visitarnos porque estaba muy ocupado.**
14. **Les dije que lo haría, pero ellos no quisieron escucharme.**
15. **Miguel le dijo a mi amigo que él saldría de Brownsville a la caída del sol.**
16. **¿Quién estaría con Manuel en el juego?**
17. **Sería su primo de Nueva York.**

18. Él la llevaría al juego tan pronto como ella llegó.
19. El señor López iría al teatro.
20. Ellos verían a los niños llegar.

### LESSON XVIII

1. ¿A qué hora se levantó Vd. esta mañana?
2. Me levanté a las seis esta mañana, pero estoy acostumbrado a levantarme más temprano.
3. ¿Cuánto tiempo se quedó John en Juárez antes de entrar en los Estados Unidos?
4. No me acuerdo de la fecha, pero creo que él llegó el (día) cinco del mes pasado.
5. Cuando entré en la casa anoche, me quité el sombrero, me lavé la cara y las manos, y me senté a la mesa para comer.
6. María me dijo que ella no se lavó el pelo porque no tuvo tiempo.
7. ¿Cuántas veces se paró Vd. cuando iba para Las Vegas, y cuánto tiempo se quedó en cada lugar?
8. ¿Sabe Vd. el nombre del contrabandista que lo pasó de contrabando a este lado?
9. Enrique se estaba bañando cuando María le telefoneó.
10. Yo estaba tratando de escaparme cuando los oficiales me arrestaron.
11. ¿Cómo se escapó Vd. de la cárcel la última vez que Vd. fué arrestado?
12. Aquí se vende ropa al por mayor.
13. Él se puso el sombrero, se subió al carro, y fué a casa donde fué arrestado por el policía.
14. En este edificio, se les venden cuartos y apartamientos a los pobres.
15. ¿A qué hora se acostó Vd. anoche?
16. A las once, pero eran como las dos y media cuando me dormí.
17. Puse el periódico en la mesa, pero no está allí ahora.
18. Él se sentó y empezó a hablarme acerca de la guerra.
19. La madre del niño lo baña cada mañana a las nueve.
20. Su mamá la levantó muy temprano ayer.
21. Súbase al carro, pero tenga cuidado de no caerse.
22. Los dos hombres se quitaron los zapatos y gatearon por el chaparral hasta que llegaron a la orilla del arroyo.
23. Se venden muchas vacas en este rancho.
24. Ella tiene que vestirse en treinta minutos.
25. ¡Cállese! Estoy cansado de oírlo.

## LESSON XIX

1. Él tiene tantos niños como el amigo de Vd., pero los niños de él están en México.
2. La cicatriz de él es más grande que la de ella.
3. Su café es mejor que el mío.
4. Este recibo es más viejo que aquél, pero aquél es mejor.
5. Él piensa venir más tarde que nadie.
6. Las tazas que ellos tienen son más bonitas que las que vendieron.
7. Las muchachas usan faldas más cortas ahora.
8. Teófilo parece menor que su hermano.
9. La tarjeta se expidió más pronto que la fecha prometida.
10. Mi esposa gasta más dinero de lo que yo gano.
11. No pensaba comprarlo, pero lo compré.
12. No lo quiero comprar sino pedirlo prestado.
13. Él no juega fútbol sino béisbol.
14. Tenemos solo cuatro días para trabajar.
15. Ellos tienen más de cinco días para conseguir sus pasaportes.
16. Él no ocupa mojados sino braceros.
17. El señor López no ocupó mojados este año, pero el año pasado sí.
18. Los niños pueden correr más rápido que Vd. o yo.
19. Ellos acabarán más pronto que aquellos hombres.
20. Los hacendados han sembrado más maíz este año que el año pasado.
21. Ellos me deben más de cincuenta dólares.
22. El señor Jones es el hombre más rico de nuestro pueblo, pero está malo.
23. Él vive en el edificio más alto de la avenida número diez.
24. John no gana más de cinco dólares por día, pero él no gasta tanto como su hermano.
25. Mi hijo menor nació en los Estados Unidos en mil novecientos cincuenta y ocho.
26. El mejor amigo de él es altísimo.
27. ¡Muchísimas gracias!

## LESSON XX

### Exercise No. 1

1. El cónsul le dijo al señor López que regresara la semana que viene.
2. El señor Guerra le dijo que él no podía conseguir los papeles necesarios.

3. **Dígales que se queden en ese lado por unos cuantos días.**
4. **Los aduaneros nos mandaron que les enseñáramos nuestras maletas.**
5. **Nos pidieron que las abriéramos y que sacáramos nuestra ropa.**
6. **¿Quiere Eloísa que la llevemos al aeropuerto?**
7. **Le rogamos que se quedara por unas cuantas semanas más.**
8. **No permitimos que los extranjeros voten el las elecciones de los Estados Unidos.**
9. **¿Le permitieron que se registrara por otro año?**
10. **Le prohibo que Vd. le diga a su amigo acerca de nosotros.**
11. **Las autoridades mexicanas no deben dejar que su hermana se escape.**
12. **Queríamos venir a este lado con nuestros padres.**
13. **¿Desea Vd. obtener certificados falsos?**
14. **Dígale a su madre que le escriba al cónsul por una visa.**
15. **El gobierno de los Estados Unidos prefiere que todos los extranjeros reporten a esta oficina antes de salir.**

## LESSON XX

### Exercise No. 2

1. **¿Se soprende que Eliseo todavía esté viviendo aquí?**
2. **Los parientes de ellos se alegraron de que ellos no fueran arrestados.**
3. **¿Por qué se alegra Vd. de que Minerva no haya llegado?**
4. **La mamá de él espera que él se case pronto.**
5. **¿No tiene miedo de continuar sin lavarse las manos?**
6. **Siento que Vd. haya perdido su equipaje.**
7. **No podemos negar que nosotros vadeamos el río.**
8. **Él no cree que la criada de Vd. sea ciudadana de los Estados Unidos.**
9. **Marcos sabe que lo soltarán para mañana.**
10. **¿Es necesario ser ciudadano de los Estados Unidos para ser dueño de propiedad aquí?**
11. **Era necesario que nosotros le mandáramos el sueldo de él.**
12. **Es lástima que Vd. no vaya con nosotros.**
13. **¿Es verdad que Vd. conocía al banquero?**
14. **Será imposible llevar a todos estos hombres al corralón.**
15. **Esperaban que fuera importante.**

## LESSON XX

### Exercise No. 3

1. Necesitamos una casa que tenga tres recámaras.
2. Ellos tienen una casa de remolque que es muy pequeña.
3. Ella busca un hombre que sea guapo, inteligente, y rico.
4. El señor Billings quiere una secretaria que pueda hablar español.
5. Él tiene una hermana que se volvió loca hace muchos años.
6. El hacendado anda buscando un hombre que trabaje con él.
7. Los labradores tienen que sembrar el algodón antes de que llueva.
8. Pensamos salir a menos que él nos pague más dinero.
9. Bonifacio le ayudará a regar con tal que le dé un trabajo permanente.
10. Traiga sus documentos aquí tan pronto como los halle.
11. Los tendré listos para que Vd. los venda mañana.
12. Suponiendo que Vd. la traiga, ¿qué dirá ella?
13. Dígale a él que espere en la sala de espera hasta que vengamos.
14. Enrique esperó hasta que salió el correo.
15. Tan pronto como Alfonso se hizo rico, él olvidó a sus viejos amigos.
16. Cuando Vd. obtenga los papeles necesarios Vd. puede comenzar a vivir aquí.
17. Quiero que Vd. lo tenga listo para cuando ellos vengan.
18. Marta y Gloria estaban aquí para cuando llegaron los paquetes.
19. Él cruzó el río antes de que los oficiales pudieran pararlo.
20. Él dijo que saldría cuando Vd. le dijera.

## LESSON XX

### Exercise No. 4

1. Si hubiera bastante trabajo en las labores, ¿trabajaría Vd. allí?
2. Si Manuel tiene suficiente dinero, ¿lo comprará?
3. Vd. no estaría en la cárcel ahora, si Vd. me hubiera escuchado.
4. ¿Se habrían escapado ellos, si Vd. no les hubiera dicho?
5. Si Vd. no tuviera empleo, yo le ayudaría.
6. Yo iría al pueblo si no hiciera tanto calor.
7. ¿Regresaría Vd. a ese país si Vd. tuviera la oportunidad?
8. Si hubiera habido un oficial allí, ¿le habría advertido su novia?
9. Si Vd. hubiera sabido que iba a ser arrestado, ¿habría entrado Vd. en el edificio?
10. Yo me habría quedado en la fiesta si lo hubiera visto a Vd.

## USEFUL EXPRESSIONS

**a cosa (eso) de las dos**—at about two
**¿A cuánto estamos?**—what is the date?
**a cuestas**—on one's back; piggyback
**a fines de**—late in, towards the end of (week, month, year, etc.)
**a gatas**—crawling
**a lado de**—beside
**a mediados de**—about the middle of (week, month, year, etc.)
**a menudo**—often
**a o(b)scuras**—in the dark
**a pie**—on foot
**a principios de**—early in, about the first of (week, month, year, etc.)
**a propósito**—incidently; by the way
**¿a qué hora?**—at what time?
**a ratos**—at times
**a toda velocidad**—at full speed
**a todo correr**—at full speed
**a últimos del mes**—at the end of the month
**a veces**—sometimes; at times
**a ver**—let's see
**ahora**—now
**a la buena (mala)**—willingly (by force; unwillingly)
**a la caída de la tarde**—at sunset
**a la caída del sol**—at sunset
**a la derecha**—to the right
**a la izquierda**—to the left
**a la larga**—in the long run
**a la madrugada**—in the wee hours of the morning
**a lo largo de**—along
**al amanecer**—at dawn (daybreak)
**al anochecer**—at dusk (nightfall)
**al contado**—cash
**al fiado**—on credit
**al fin**—finally
**al fin del año**—at the end of the year
**al fin y al cabo**—in the end
**al otro lado**—to the (at the) other side
**al principio**—at first
**al último**—at the end (last)
**algo que comer**—something to eat
**alto**—stop
**ándele**—hurry
**¡basta!**—enough!
**caer bien (mal)**—to fit well (badly); to please (displease)
**calle arriba (abajo)**—up (down) the street
**camino de**—on the road to; on the way to
**como a**—at about
**como de costumbre**—as usual
**como en**—in about
**con permiso**—excuse me; with your permission
**¡con razón!**—no wonder!
**contar con**—to rely on; to count on
**creer que no**—to believe (think) not
**creer que sí**—to believe (think) so
**costar mucho trabajo**—to be very difficult; requiring much effort
**¡Cuidado!**—Be careful!
**cueste lo que cueste**—regardless of cost; cost what it may
**cumplir (con) su palabra**—to keep one's word
**dar a**—to face
**dar atención**—to pay attention
**dar con**—to chance upon
**dar de comer**—to feed
**dar en**—to hit upon
**dar fianza por**—to post bond for
**dar la hora**—to strike the hour
**dar la mano**—to help; to handshake
**dar la vuelta**—to take or go for a ride
**dar las gracias**—to thank
**dar un paseo**—to take or go for a ride or walk
**dar una vuelta**—(same as above)
**darse cuenta de (que)**—to notice; to realize
**darse por ofendido**—to take offense; to become offended
**darse por vencido**—to surrender; to acknowledge defeat; to give up
**darse prisa**—to hurry
**de ahí en adelante**—from then on
**de aquí en adelante**—from now on
**de aquel tiempo en adelante**—from that time on
**de buena gana**—gladly
**de este modo**—like this; in this manner
**de hoy en adelante**—from now on

de mala gana—unwillingly
de moda—in vogue; stylish
de nada—you are welcome
¡De ninguna manera!—I should say not! Under no circumstances!
de nuevo—again; anew
de oquis (dioquis)—idle; free (coll.)
de pie—standing
de pronto—suddenly
de punto—just right
¿De qué tamaño es?—What size is it?
de todos modos—at any rate; anyhow
¿de veras?—really?
de vez en cuando—from time to time
de vuelta—again
decir para sí—to say to oneself
dejar caer—to drop
dejar de (plus infinitive)—to stop or cease
dentro de poco—within a short while
desde entonces—since then
dicho y hecho—sure enough; no sooner said than done
Dispénseme.—Excuse me.
echar al correo—to mail
echar a perder—to ruin; to spoil
echar de menos—to miss; to feel the absence of
en abonos—on installments
en casa—at home
en cuanto a—concerning; as far as
en otras palabras—in other words
en otros términos—in other words
en pleno día—in broad daylight
en punto—on the dot; sharp
¿En qué puedo servirle?—What can I do for you?
en vez de—instead of
en voz alta—aloud
en voz baja—whisper
es decir—that is to say
¡Eso es!—That's it. That's right
Está bien (bueno).—All right.; Okay.
estación de gasolina—gas station
estar airoso—to be windy
estar bien de salud—to be in good health
estar crudo—to have a hangover
estar de acuerdo—to agree; to be in accordance
estar de prisa—to be in a hurry
estar de vacaciones—to be on vacation
estar de vuelta—to be back
estar dispuesto—to be willing
estar listo (para plus infinitive)—to be ready
estar para (plus infinitive)—to be about
estar por—to be in favor of
estar seguro—to be sure
expendio de gasolina—gas station
faltar a su palabra—to break one's word; to break a promise
haber—there to be
haber lodo—to be muddy
haber luna—for the moon to be out
haber polvo—to be dusty
haber de—to be (supposed) to (plus infinitive)
haber quienes—there to be those who
haber sol—to be sunny
hacer (plus a period of time)—ago
hacer arreglos—to make arrangements
hacer buen (mal) tiempo—to fare well; to be good or bad weather
hacer calor—to be hot weather
hacer caso de—to mind; to pay attention, heed
hacer falta—to lack; to be in need of
hacer frío—to be cold (weather)
hacer fresco—to be cool (weather)
hacer (un) juramento—to swear; to make a statement under oath
hacer luna (sol)—to shine—moon (sun)
hacer pedazos—to destroy; to tear to pieces
hacer una pregunta—to ask a question
hacer una visita—to make a visit
hacer un papel—to play a role
hacer un viaje—to make (take) a trip
hacer viento(aire)—to be windy
hacerle la primera cura a—to render first aid to
hacerse—to become
hacerse cargo—to be responsible for; to take charge

**hacerse el sordo**—to pretend to be deaf
**hacerse noche**—to grow late; to get late (in the evening)
**hacerse tarde**—to get late
**haga el favor de**—please
**hasta la vista**—goodbye; so long
**hasta luego**—goodbye; until we meet again
**hoy día**—nowadays
**ir al centro**—to go downtown
**ir a medias**—to go 50-50
**ir de compras**—to go shopping
**levantar la mesa**—to clear the table
**lo más pronto posible**—as soon as possible
**llegar a ser**—to become (rich, doctor, etc.)
**llevar puesto**—to wear; to have on
**llevarse bien (mal)**—to get along well (badly)
**mañana por la mañana**—tomorrow morning
**¿Mande?**—I beg your pardon?; Yes?; What?; What can I do for you?
**más acá de**—on this side of; before you get to
**más allá de**—on the other side of; beyond
**más que nunca**—more than ever
**montar a caballo**—to ride horseback
**no cabe duda**—there's no question or doubt about it
**no caer bien**—to displease
**No hay de (por) que.**—You are welcome.; Don't mention it.
**No le hace.**—It doesn't matter.; It doesn't make any difference.
**no poder con**—not to be able to manage or handle; to be too much for one
**no poder más**—to be exhausted; to be all in
**No vale la pena.**—It is not worth while.
**otra vez**—again
**¿Para qué lo usan?**—What is it used for?
**¿Para qué se usa?**—What is it used for?
**¿Para qué sirve?**—What is it good for?
**pasar las vacaciones**—to spend one's vacation
**¡Pase!**—Come in!
**pedir prestado**—to borrow
**perder cuidado**—to be at ease; not to worry
**perder de vista**—to lose sight of
**perder el tiempo**—to lose time
**perder el tren**—to miss the train
**poco a poco**—little by little
**poner la mesa**—to set the table
**poner una queja**—to file a complaint
**ponerse** (plus an adjective)—to put on; to become
**ponerse a**—to begin; to start
**ponerse en pie**—to stand up
**por aquí**—this way
**por eso**—so; that's why
**por favor**—please
**por fin**—finally
**por la buena (mala)**—willingly (unwillingly)
**por las buenas o las malas**—by hook or crook
**por la pronto**—for the time being
**por lo menos**—at least
**Por nada.**—You are welcome.
**por si acaso**—just in case
**pos supuesto**—of course
**por término medio**—as an average
**por todas partes**—everywhere
**prestar atención**—to pay attention
**¿Puedo servirle en algo?**—May I help you?
**quedar en** (plus infinitive)—to agree upon
**quedarse con**—to keep; to retain
**¿Qué día del mes tenemos?**—What is the date?
**¿Qué ha sido de . . .?**—What has become of . . .?
**¿Qué hora es?**—What time is it?
**¿Qué horas son?**—What time is it?
**¿Qué hubo?**—What's up?
**¿Qué le parece?**—What do you think (of)?
**Que le vaya bien.**—Good luck.
**Que lo pase bien.**—Have a good day (night, etc.).
**¿Qué pasó?**—What happened?
**¿Qué tal?**—How are you?
**Que vaya con Dios.**—God be with you.

**¿Qué sé yo?**—What do I know?; How should I know?
**querer decir**—to mean
**¿Quién sabe?**—Who knows?; I don't know.
**recibir noticias de**—to hear from
**respecto a**—concerning; about
**salir bien (mal)**—to be successful (to fail)
**salirse con la suya**—to have one's way
**se dice**—it is said
**sea lo que sea**—be it what it may
**seguro que sí**—of course
**sentar bien a**—to fit well
**ser (la) hora de**—to be time (to eat, to go, etc.)
**Suelte Vd. la mano.**—Relax your hand.
**tan a prisa**—so hurriedly (fast)
**tan de prisa**—so hurriedly (fast)
**tardar en**—to be long in
**tener . . . años**—to be . . . years old
**tener a la vista**—to have in sight
**tener calor**—to be hot
**tener cuidado**—to be careful
**tener dolor de . . .**—to have a . . . ache
**tener en cuenta**—to bear in mind
**tener éxito**—to be successful
**tener frío**—to be cold
**tener ganas de**—to feel like
**tener gusto en**—to be glad to
**tener hambre**—to be hungry
**tener la culpa**—to be to blame; to be guilty
**tener la palabra**—to have the floor
**tener lugar**—to take place
**tener miedo**—to be afraid
**tener por**—to take for (a fool, etc.)
**tener presente**—to bear in mind
**tener prisa**—to be in a hurry
**tener puesto**—to wear; to have on
**tener que** (plus infinitive)—to have
**tener razón**—to be right
**tener sed**—to be thirsty
**tener sueño**—to be sleepy
**tener vergüenza**—to be shy; to be ashamed
**traer puesto**—to wear; to have on
**trastos de cocina**—kitchen utensils
**un poco de**—a little bit of
**valer la pena**—to be worth while
**¡Vaya!**—Come now!; You don't say!
**venga lo que venga**—come what may
**volver a** (plus infinitive)—to do again
**volver corriendo**—to hurry back
**volver en sí**—to regain consciousness
**volverse loco**—to go crazy

## PRACTICE MATERIAL

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tengo las manos frías.** | My hands are cold. |
| **Él tiene los pies fríos.** | His feet are cold. |
| **Ella tiene los ojos azules.** | Her eyes are blue. |
| **¿Qué tiene Vd.?** | What is the matter with you? |
| **¿Cuántos años tiene Vd.?** | How old are you? |
| **¿Qué edad tiene Vd.?** | How old are you? |
| **Habrá mucha gente aquí.** | There will be a lot of people here. |
| **¿Está su papá? Sí, señor, pase Vd.** | Is your papa at home? Yes, sir, come in. |
| **Mi reloj anda atrasado.** | My watch is slow. |
| **¿Qué tanto tiempo tiene Vd. aquí?** | How long have you been here? |
| **No caben muchos alumnos en este cuarto.** | This room will not hold many students. |
| **Me duelen los ojos.** | My eyes hurt. |
| **Él se puso a reparar el reloj.** | He set to work repairing the watch. |
| **Él no tardó en llegar.** | He was not long in arriving. |
| **Tengo gusto en conocerle.** | I am glad to know you. |
| **Le presento al señor Jones.** | This is Mr. Jones. |
| **Este es el señor Jones.** | This is Mr. Jones. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Después supe que él era ciudadano de México** | Then I found out that he was a citizen of Mexico. |
| **Allá voy, señor.** | I'm coming, sir. |
| **Ya voy.** | I'm going right now. |
| **¿Qué tan lejos está?** | How far is it? |
| **¿Qué distancia hay de Juárez a El Paso?** | How far is it from Juarez to El Paso? |
| **¿Cuántas millas hay de Juárez a El Paso?** | How many miles is it from Juarez to El Paso? |
| **No tuve oportunidad de hacerlo.** | I didn't have a chance to do it. |
| **¿Qué tanto (cuánto) tiempo se quedó (pasó) Vd. allí?** | How long did you stay over there? |
| **Él se puso a correr.** | He began to run. |
| **Él carro se puso en marcha.** | The car started. |
| **Ella está bien de salud.** | She is in good health. |
| **Él pegó fuego a la casa.** | He set the house on fire. |
| **Ella se puso enojada.** | She became angry. |
| **Él se hizo rico.** | He became rich. |
| **Me puse el sombrero.** | I put on my hat. |
| **Póngase Vd. en pie.** | Stand up. |
| **Estamos muy atrasados porque mi esposo no tiene trabajo.** | We are very much behind (set back) because my husband does not have work. |
| **Pase Vd. por aquí.** | Come this way. |
| **Se prohibe estacionarse aquí.** | Parking is prohibited here.<br>No parking. |
| **No hable tan aprisa.** | Don't speak so fast. |
| **¿En qué se ocupa Vd.?** | What is your occupation? |
| **¿Cuál es su nacionalidad?** | What is your nationality? |
| **¿De qué nacionalidad es Vd.?** | What is your nationality? |
| **¿De qué raza es Vd.?** | What is your race? |
| **Le voy a imponer una multa de $10.00.** | I am going to fine you $10.00. |
| **Me impusieron una multa de $5.00.** | They fined me $5.00. |
| **Le tengo por un buen hombre.** | I consider him a good man. |
| **Le vimos cruzar el río.** | We saw him cross the river. |
| **Subí a lo alto de la loma de arena.** | I climbed to the top of the sand hill. |
| **Yo entré en el automóvil hace poco.** | I entered the car not long ago. |
| **Tomamos un poco de agua.** | We drank a little water. |
| **Lo vendí en veinte pesos.** | I sold it for twenty pesos. |
| **El hombre acaba de entrar.** | The man has just entered. |
| **Eso está bien.** | That is all right. |
| **Creo que sí, pero él cree que no.** | I think so, but he doesn't. |
| **¿Llovió mucho ayer?** | Did it rain much yesterday? |
| **¡Ya lo creo!** | I should say so! |
| **Ella cumplió diez (años) ayer.** | She was ten years old yesterday. |
| **Dieron las tres hace rato.** | It struck three (o'clock) a short time ago. |
| **Mi casa da al norte.** | My house faces the north. |
| **Dimos un paseo en automóvil.** | We took an automobile ride. |
| **Lo hice de buena gana.** | I did it gladly. |
| **Su traje es muy de moda.** | His suit is very stylish. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Él me dejó entrar.** | He let me enter. |
| **Ellos dejaron de venir.** | They stopped coming. |
| **Voy a escribirla en seguida.** | I am going to write it at once. |
| **Él trabajó todo el día.** | He worked all day. |
| **Iremos los dos a visitarla.** | We shall both go visit her. |
| **Vd. se equivoca.** | You are mistaken. |
| **Apresúrese Vd., se hace tarde.** | Hurry, it is getting late. |
| **Me parece que es culpa suya.** | I think (it seems to me) that it is your fault. |
| **Por malo que sea, es honesto.** | However bad he is, he is honest. |
| **Me quedan dos dólares.** | I have two dollars left. |
| **Seguimos escribiendo.** | We continued writing. |
| **Es la hora de comer.** | It is time to eat. |
| **¿No se siente Vd. bien?** | Don't you feel well? |
| **Yo me serví de su carro.** | I used your car. |
| **Tengo dolor de cabeza.** | I have a headache. |
| **Ahora me toca a mí decir algo.** | Now it is my turn to say something. |
| **Quiero decirle algo a Vd.** | I want to tell you something. |
| **La boda tuvo lugar ayer.** | The marriage (wedding) took place yesterday. |
| **Ella lo dijo en voz baja.** | She said it in a whisper. |
| **Él ya no fuma.** | He no longer smokes. |
| **No tenemos nada que vender.** | We have nothing to sell. |
| **Él salió de aquí muy de mañana.** | He left here very early in the morning. |

## QUESTIONS FOR OBTAINING PERSONAL DATA

### NAME

Tell me your complete and correct name.
**Dígame su nombre completo y correcto.**
**¿Cómo se llama Vd.?**

### NATIONALITY (CITIZENSHIP)

Of what country are you a citizen or national?
**¿De qué país es Vd. ciudadano o nacional?**
**¿Cuál es su ciudadanía o nacionalidad?**

### DATE OF BIRTH

On what day, month and year were you born?
**¿En qué día, mes y año nació Vd.?**

### BIRTHPLACE

Where were you born? Tell me the name of the ranch, the town, the state, and the country.
**¿(En) dónde nació Vd.? Dígame el nombre del rancho, del pueblo, del estado, y del país.**

### UNITED STATES ADDRESS

What is your address in the United States?
**¿Cuál es su dirección en los Estados Unidos?**
**¿Tiene Vd. domicilio en los Estados Unidos? Si es así, ¿cuál es su dirección aquí?**

### PERMANENT ADDRESS

What is your permanent address?
**¿Cuál es su dirección permanente?**

### NAME, ADDRESS, AND NATIONALITY OF SPOUSE

What is your wife's (husband's) name, and what is her (his) address and nationality?
**¿Cómo se llama su esposa (esposo) y cuál es la dirección y la nacionalidad de ella (de él)?**

### NUMBER AND NATIONALITY OF MINOR CHILDREN

How many children of minor age do you have, and what is their nationality?
**¿Cuántos niños menores de edad tiene Vd. y cuál es la nacionalidad de ellos?**

### FATHER'S NAME AND NATIONALITY

What is your father's name, and what is his nationality?
**¿Cómo se llama su padre y cuál es la nacionalidad de él?**
**Dígame el nombre y la nacionalidad de su padre.**

### MOTHER'S NAME AND NATIONALITY

What is your mother's name, and what is her nationality?
**¿Cómo se llama su madre y cuál es la nacionalidad de ella?**
**Dígame el nombre y la nacionalidad de su madre.**

### IMMIGRATION RECORD

Besides this last time, how many times have you been arrested by the Immigration Service?
**Además de esta última vez, ¿cuántas veces ha sido arrestado Vd. por el Servicio de Inmigración?**

### CRIMINAL RECORD

Have you ever been arrested by the police anywhere for having violated some other law?
**¿Ha sido arrestado Vd. por la policía en cualquier parte alguna vez por haber violado alguna otra ley?**
**¿Ha sido arrestado o ha estado Vd. en la cárcel por algún otro crimen?**

### SCARS OR MARKS

Do you have visible marks or scars?
**¿Tiene Vd. marcas o cicatrices visibles?**
**¿Qué cicatrices o marcas tiene Vd.?**

### OCCUPATION

What kind of work do you do?
**¿Qué clase de trabajo hace Vd.?**
**¿Cuál es su ocupación?**
**¿En qué se ocupa Vd.?**

### ALIEN REGISTRATION

Do you have evidence of having been registered as an alien with the Immigration Service of the United States?
**¿Tiene Vd. evidencia de habérsele registrado como extranjero con el Servicio de Inmigración de los Estados Unidos?**

### SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER

What is the number of your social security card?

**¿Cuál es el número de su tarjeta de seguro social?**

### PROPERTY IN THE UNITED STATES NOT IN IMMEDIATE POSSESSION

Do you have any property or personal things in the United States that you don't have (carry) with you?

**¿Tiene Vd. alguna propiedad o algunas cosas personales en los Estados Unidos que no lleva Vd. consigo?**

**¿Tiene Vd. propiedad de cualquier clase en los Estados Unidos que no está en su poder?**

### TIME AND DATE OF ENTRY

When did you enter the United States the last time? Tell me the hour, day, month, and year.

**¿Cuándo entró Vd. en los Estados Unidos la última vez? Dígame la hora, el día, el mes, y el año.**

### MANNER AND PLACE OF ENTRY

How and where did you enter the United States the last time?

**¿Cómo y por dónde entró Vd. en los Estados Unidos la última vez?**

### PURPOSE OF ENTRY

For (with) what purpose did you enter the United States the last time?

**¿Con qué propósito entró Vd. en los Estados Unidos la última vez?**

### ALIASES

Have you ever used any other names?

**¿Ha usado Vd. algunos otros nombros alguna vez?**

**¿Tiene Vd. sobrenombres aparte de su nombre correcto?**

### MODE OF TRAVEL FROM THE INTERIOR TO THE BORDER

When did you leave ____________ and how did you travel from there to the border?

**¿Cuándo salió Vd. de ____________ y cómo viajó de allí a la frontera?**

### ORGANIZATIONS

Are you now or have you ever been a member of any organized group?

**¿Es Vd. ahora o ha sido Vd. alguna vez antes miembro de cualquier organización?**

**¿Pertenece Vd. a cualquier grupo organizado? ¿A cuál?**

### PRACTICE DIALOGUE NO. 1

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Do you know who I am? | **Q. ¿Sabe Vd. quien soy yo?** |
| A. No, sir, I do not know you. | **A. No, señor, no le conozco a Vd.** |
| Q. I am an Immigration Officer of the United States, and I want to ask you a few questions (talk to you) concerning your entry into the United States. When did you come to the United States the last time? | **Q. Yo soy Oficial de Inmigración de los Estados Unidos, y quiero hacerle unas preguntas (hablar con Vd.) tocante (respecto) a su entrada en los Estados Unidos. ¿Cuándo vino Vd. a los Estados Unidos la última vez?** |
| A. I entered last Tuesday. | **A. Yo entré el martes pasado.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Where did you enter the last time? | Q. ¿Por dónde entró Vd. la última vez? |
| A. Through a place near El Paso, Texas. | A. Por un lugar cerca de El Paso, Texas. |
| Q. Were you assisted (helped) in entering? | Q. ¿Fué Vd. ayudado a entrar? (¿Le ayudaron a entrar?) |
| A. Yes, sir, a man who lives in Juarez showed me where to cross the river. | A. Sí, señor, un hombre que vive en Juárez me enseñó (por) donde cruzar el río. |
| Q. How long have you known this man? | Q. ¿Por cuánto tiempo ha conocido Vd. a este hombre? |
| A. I met him (the first time) in a saloon in Juarez on the same day in which I came to the United States. | A. Yo le conocí a él en una cantina en Ciudad Juárez el mismo día en que vine a los Estados Unidos. |
| Q. What is the name of the man who helped you? | Q. ¿Cómo se llama el hombre que le ayudó a Vd.? |
| A. His name is Jose Garcia. | A. Se llama José García. |
| Q. Did you know that Jose Garcia was a smuggler? | Q. ¿Sabía Vd. que José García era contrabandista? |
| A. No, while we were talking in the saloon, he asked me where I was going. | A. No, mientras (que) estábamos platicando (hablando) en la cantina, (él) me preguntó a dónde iba. |
| Q. Did you tell him that you wanted to go to the United States? | Q. ¿Le dijo Vd. a él que quería ir a los Estados Unidos? |
| A. I told him that I wanted to go to New Mexico but that the consul did not give me a visa. | A. Yo le dije que quería ir a Nuevo México pero que el cónsul no me dió una visa. |
| Q. What did he say then? | Q. ¿Qué dijo él entonces? |
| A. He said he knew of a place where I could cross the river without being seen by the Immigration Officers. | A. El dijo que sabía de un lugar (por) donde yo podía cruzar el río sin ser visto por los Oficiales de Inmigración? |
| Q. What more did he say? | Q. ¿Qué más dijo él? |
| A. He told me that he would help me cross the river and would take me to Las Cruces for ten dollars. | A. Me dijo que me ayudaría a cruzar el río y que me llevaría a Las Cruces por diez dólares. |
| Q. Did you accept the offer? | Q. ¿Aceptó Vd. la oferta? |
| A. Yes, in accordance with the arrangements, I met him on the square at six in the morning. | A. Sí, según los arreglos, le encontré a él en la plaza a las seis de la mañana. |
| Q. Tell me what you (pl) did then. | Q. Dígame Vd. lo que hicieron Vds. entonces. |
| A. We walked about a mile east of Juarez, and from there the smuggler took me to the other side of the river in a row boat. | A. Anduvimos como una milla al este de Juárez, y de allí el contrabandista me llevó al otro lado del río en un bote de remos. |
| Q. Did he cross the river with you? | Q. ¿Cruzó él el río con Vd.? |
| A. Yes, sir, and on this side of the river we met another man who took me to Las Cruces. | A. Sí señor, y en este lado del río encontramos a otro hombre que me llevó a Las Cruces. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. To whom and when did you pay the money? | Q. ¿A quién y cuándo le pagó Vd. el dinero? |
| A. I paid Jose Garcia five dollars before crossing the river and gave the other man five dollars after arriving in Las Cruces. | A. Le pagué cinco dólares a José García antes de cruzar el río y le di cinco dólares al otro hombre después de llegar a Las Cruces. |
| Q. How did you travel from El Paso to Las Cruces? | Q. ¿Cómo viajó Vd. de El Paso a Las Cruces? |
| A. We traveled in a black sedan, but I do not know what make it was. | A. Viajamos en un sedán negro, pero no sé de que marca era. |

## PRACTICE DIALOGUE NO. 2

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. You have said that you entered the United States through the entrance gate at Nogales, Arizona, right? | Q. Vd. ha dicho que entró en los Estados Unidos por la garita de Nogales, Arizona, ¿verdad? |
| A. Yes sir, I crossed (passed) with my local passport. | A. Sí señor, yo pasé con mi pasaporte local. |
| Q. For what purpose did you enter? | Q. ¿Para qué entró Vd.? |
| A. I came to look for work in Tucson. | A. Vine a buscar trabajo en Tucsón. |
| Q. Haven't you read the warning on your local card? | Q. ¿No ha leído Vd. el aviso en su tarjeta local? |
| A. I don't know how to read or write. | A. Yo no sé leer ni escribir. |
| Q. The officer who issued you the card explained to you that this served only for business and pleasure visits. Isn't that right? | Q. El oficial que le expidió la tarjeta le explicó a Vd. que ésta servía nada más para visitas de negocio o de placer. ¿No es verdad? |
| A. Well, I came on business. I came to look for work. | A. Pues, yo vine a negocio. Vine a buscar trabajo. |
| Q. The card indicates that you can not accept employment here in the United States. | Q. La tarjeta indica que Vd. no puede aceptar empleo aquí en los Estados Unidos. |
| A. Sir, I didn't want permanent employment. I wanted to stay only two or three weeks. | A. Señor, yo no quería empleo permanente. Quería quedarme no más dos o tres semanas. |
| Q. The warning on the card (the card's warning) also explains that you cannot stay here (remain here) more than seventy two hours without possessing other papers for a longer period of time. | Q. El aviso de la tarjeta también explica que Vd. no puede permanecer aquí más de setenta y dos horas sin poseer otros papeles para un período más largo. |

## PRACTICE DIALOGUE NO. 3

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. What is your name? | Q. ¿Cómo se llama Vd.? |
| A. My name is Epifania Santos de Garcia. | A. Me llamo Epifania Santos de García. |
| Q. How old are you? | Q. ¿Cuántos años tiene Vd.? |
| A. I am 46 years of age. | A. Tengo cuarenta y seis años (de edad). |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Are you married? | Q. ¿Es Vd. casada? |
| A. Yes sir, I am married. | A. Sí señor, soy casada. |
| Q. Where do you live now? | Q. ¿(En) dónde vive Vd. ahora? |
| A. I live in Pocatello, Idaho. | A. Vivo en Pocatello, Idaho. |
| Q. When and where did you enter the United States? | Q. ¿Cuándo y por dónde entró Vd. en los Estados Unidos? |
| A. I entered through the port of El Paso, Texas about 25 years ago. | A. Yo entré por la garita de El Paso, Texas hace como veinte y cinco años. |
| Q. Were you admitted to reside here permanently? | Q. ¿Fué Vd. admitida para residir aquí permanentemente? |
| A. Yes, sir, I was admitted by the Immigration Service. | A. Sí, señor, fuí admitida por el Servicio de Inmigración. |
| Q. The files of this office indicate that you were admitted on July 20, last year. Is this true? | Q. Los archivos de esta oficina indican que Vd. fué admitida el veinte de julio del año pasado. ¿Es verdad? |
| A. Yes, sir. | A. Sí, señor. |
| Q. How did you come from Pocatello, Idaho, to El Paso, Texas? | Q. ¿Cómo vino Vd. de Pocatello, Idaho, a El Paso, Texas? |
| A. I came in a car with my son, my daughter, my daughter-in-law, and her children. | A. Vine en un carro con mi hijo, mi hija, mi nuera, y los hijos de ella. |
| Q. Do all the people who came with you live in Pocatello? | Q. ¿Viven en Pocatello todas las personas que vinieron con Vd.? |
| A. Yes sir, they live there. | A. Sí señor, viven allí. |
| Q. Why did you go to Mexico? | Q. ¿Por qué fué Vd. a México? |
| A. I went to Juarez, Chih., Mexico, to visit my daughter, Elvira Gonzalez. She lives there at (on) Calle Madero, #246. | A. Fuí a Juárez, Chih., México, para visitar a mi hija, Elvira González. Ella vive allí en la Calle Madero, número doscientos cuarenta y seis. |
| Q. When and where did your daughter, Elvira, marry? | Q. ¿Cuándo y en dónde se casó su hija, Elvira? |
| A. She married in Pocatello before departing for Mexico about 14 years ago. Her husband died in Mexico. | A. Ella se casó en Pocatello antes de partir para México hace como catorce años. Su esposo murió en México. |
| Q. How many children does your daughter have? | Q. ¿Cuántos niños tiene su hija? |
| A. She has three children, two born in Pocatello and a younger one born in Juarez. The youngest is an illegitimate daughter. | A. Tiene tres niños, dos nacidos en Pocatello y una más joven nacida en Juárez. La menor es hija natural. |
| Q. What is the name of the youngest? | Q. ¿Cómo se llama la menor? |
| A. Her name is Gloria. | A. Ella se llama Gloria. |
| Q. When and where did your granddaughter, Gloria, enter the United States the last time? | Q. ¿Cuándo y por dónde entró su nieta, Gloria, en los Estados Unidos la última vez? |

| | |
|---|---|
| A. She entered July 20 of last year when I made arrangements to smuggle her into the United States. | A. Ell entró el veinte de julio del año pasado cuando yo hice arreglos para pasarla de contrabando a los Estados Unidos. |
| Q. When she entered, was she inspected and admitted by an Immigrant Inspector? | Q. Cuando ella entró, ¿fué inspeccionada y admitida por un Inspector de Inmigración? |
| A. No, sir, she was not inspected nor admitted. They denied me permission to bring her on that same date. | A. No señor, ella no fué inspeccionada ni admitida. Me negaron permiso para traerla en esa misma fecha. |
| Q. Why did you wish to bring your granddaughter to the United States? | Q. ¿Por qué quería Vd. traer a su nieta a los Estados Unidos? |
| A. I had received a letter from my daughter telling me that she was sick and asking me to come and take the children to Pocatello with me because she could not take care of them. | A. Yo había recibido una carta de mi hija diciéndome que ella estaba enferma y pidiéndome que yo viniera y que llevara a los niños a Pocatello conmigo porque ella no podía cuidarlos. |
| Q. What is the illness that your daughter has? | Q. ¿Qué enfermedad tiene su hija? |
| A. I think it is tuberculosis. | A. Creo que es tisis (tuberculosis). |
| Q. Is it not true that your daughter has been trying to obtain permission to return to the United States? | Q. ¿No es verdad que su hija ha estado tratando de obtener permiso para regresar a los Estados Unidos? |
| A. Yes, sir. | A. Sí, señor. |
| Q. Of what country is your granddaughter, Gloria, a citizen? | Q. ¿De qué país es ciudadana su nieta, Gloria? |
| A. She is a citizen of Mexico. She was born there. | A. Es ciudadana de México. Nació allá. |
| Q. You told me that you had tried to bring your granddaughter into the United States legally and that she was denied (the) permission. In what manner did she enter? | Q. Vd. me dijo que había tratado de traer a su nieta a los Estados Unidos legalmente y que le negaron a ella permiso. ¿De qué manera entró ella? |
| A. I returned to Juarez, and there I made arrangements to smuggle her into the United States. | A. Regresé a Ciudad Juárez, y allí hice arreglos para pasarla de contrabando a los Estados Unidos. |
| Q. Tell me exactly what were the arrangements. | Q. Dígame exactamente cuales fueron los arreglos. |
| A. After the officers denied me permission to bring Gloria, we returned to Juarez where we met a Mexican woman whose name is Rosa Caldera. She offered to smuggle Gloria into the United States. | A. Después de que los oficiales me negaron permiso para traer a Gloria, nosotros regresamos a Juárez en donde encontramos a una mexicana que se llama Rosa Caldera. Ella ofreció pasar a Gloria de contrabando a los Estados Unidos. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Why did Rosa Caldera offer to bring your granddaughter to the United States? | **Q. ¿Por qué ofreció Rosa Caldera traer a su nieta a los Estados Unidos?** |
| A. She was a very good friend of my stepbrother, Jesus Gonzalez. | **A. Ella era amigo íntima de mi hermanastro, Jesús González.** |
| Q. Were you going to pay Rosa some money? | **Q. ¿Iba Vd. a pagarle algún dinero a Rosa?** |
| A. No, sir, she did not ask for any money, but she told me that I would have to pay a little money to some children for crossing (passing) Gloria through the river. | **A. No, señor, ella no pidió dinero, pero me dijo que tendría que pagarles un poquito de dinero a algunos niños por pasar a Gloria por el río.** |
| Q. Then what did you (pl) do? | **Q. ¿Entonces qué hicieron Vds.?** |
| A. Rosa got into our car, and we went to my daughter's house where we got Gloria's clothes. We got into the car again and went to a place about two blocks south of the river where we saw the children playing in the street. | **A. Rosa subió a nuestro carro, y fuimos a la casa de mi hija en donde obtuvimos la ropa de Gloria. Entramos de nuevo en el carro y fuimos a un lugar como a dos cuadras al sur del río en donde vimos a los niños jugando en la calle.** |
| Q. What happened then? | **Q. ¿Qué pasó (sucedió) entonces?** |
| A. We remained in the car while Rosa got out and talked to the children. | **A. Nos quedamos en el carro mientras que Rosa bajó y habló con los niños.** |
| Q. What did Rosa say to the children? | **Q. ¿Qué les dijo Rosa a los niños?** |
| A. She told them that she would give them a dollar to take Gloria to the white house on the other side of the river. Gloria got out of the car and left towards the river with the children. | **A. Ella les dijo que les daría un dólar para llevar a Gloria a la casa blanca en el otro lado del río. Gloria bajó del carro y se fué hacia el río con los niños.** |
| Q. What did you do then? | **Q. ¿Qué hizo Vd. entonces?** |
| A. I returned alone through the port with my passport and went to the white house where I was arrested by the Immigration Officers. | **A. Yo volví sola por la garita con mi pasaporte y fuí a la casa blanca donde fuí arrestada por los Oficiales de Inmigración.** |

## PRACTICE DIALOGUE NO. 4

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. After walking downstream to the place where you crossed the river, how long did you wait before crossing to the United States side? | **Q. Después de andar río abajo al lugar (por) donde cruzó el río, ¿cuánto tiempo esperó Vd. antes de cruzar al lado de los Estados Unidos?** |
| A. I stayed there about fifteen minutes, and then I got a small boat out of the brush and put it in the water. | **A. Me quedé allí como quince minutos, y entonces saqué del monte una lanchita y la puse en el agua.** |
| Q. How did you know that there was a boat at that place? | **Q. ¿Cómo sabía Vd. que había una lancha en ese lugar?** |
| A. It belonged to a friend of mine, and he told me where to find it. | **A. Pertenecía a un amigo mío, y él me dijo en donde hallarla.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. For what purpose does this friend of yours use a boat? | Q. ¿Para qué usa este amigo suyo (de Vd.) una lancha? |
| A. He likes to fish and often fishes from (in) the boat. | A. Le gusta pescar y a menudo pesca de la lancha. |
| Q. Did you pay him anything for the use of the boat? | Q. ¿Le pagó Vd. algo por el uso de la lancha? |
| A. I did not pay him anything, but I was going to send him some American-made clothes. | A. No le pagué nada, pero iba a mandarle alguna ropa hecha en los Estados Unidos. |
| Q. Why did he want you to send him the clothes? | Q. ¿Por qué quería él que Vd. le mandara la ropa? |
| A. He could not cross the line through the port because he had been deported, and they had taken his permit away from him. He said that he was going to put on the American clothes and present himself at the Immigration Office claiming that he was a citizen of the United States. He had lived in El Paso and other parts of Texas for ten years and said that if he could get these American clothes, he could pass for an American citizen because he knew how to answer the officers' questions. | A. Él no podía cruzar la línea por el puerto porque había sido deportado y le habían quitado el permiso. Él dijo que iba a ponerse la ropa americana y presentarse a la Oficina de Inmigración reclamando que era ciudadano de los Estados Unidos. Él había vivido en El Paso y en otras partes de Texas por diez años y dijo que si podía obtener esta ropa americana él podía pasar como ciudadano americano porque sabía contestar las preguntas de los oficiales. |
| Q. What did you do with the boat on reaching the bank of the river on this side? | Q. ¿Qué hizo Vd. con la lancha al llegar a la orilla del río en este lado? |
| A. I left it in the water and tied it to a tree near the trail which leads to the road. | A. La dejé en el agua y la amarré a un árbol cerca del sendero que conduce al camino. |
| Q. When you saw the officers coming, why didn't you hide behind a large tree? | Q. Cuando Vd. vió venir a los oficiales, ¿por qué no se escondió detrás de un árbol grande? |
| A. I tried to do so (it), but one of them saw me and made me stop. | A. Traté de hacerlo pero uno de ellos me vió y me hizo parar. |
| Q. What did they do to you? | Q. ¿Qué le hicieron a Vd.? |
| A. They took me to the office, took my fingerprints, and made a report. I signed it, but I do not know what was in it (it contained). | A. Ellos me llevaron a la oficina, me tomaron las huellas de los dedos, e hicieron un reporte. Yo lo firmé, pero no sé que contenía. |

## PRACTICE DIALOGUE NO. 5

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Have you registered as an alien with the United States Immigration Service? | Q. ¿Se ha registrado Vd. como extranjero con el Servicio de Inmigración de los Estados Unidos? |
| A. Who, me? I do not know what you are talking about. I didn't know anything about that. Nobody told me to register. | A. ¿Quién, yo? No sé de que habla Vd. Yo no sabía nada de eso. Nadie me dijo que me registrara. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Let me see the card that they gave you when you registered for the military draft. | Q. Déjeme ver la tarjeta que le dieron a Vd. cuando se registró para el servicio militar. |
| A. I did not register because I have been in Mexico. | A. No me registré porque he estado en México. |
| Q. Why did you cross the river instead of applying for admission in the regular manner? | Q. ¿Por qué cruzó Vd. el río en vez de pedir admisión en la manera regular? |
| A. Because I have tuberculosis, and I knew that they would have rejected me if I had applied for permission to enter. | A. Porque yo tengo tisis, y sabía que me habrían rechazado si yo hubiera pedido permiso para entrar. |
| Q. Where were you born? | Q. ¿(En) dónde nació Vd.? |
| A. I was born in Hermosillo, Sonora, Mexico. | A. Yo nací en Hermosillo, Sonora, México. |
| Q. Are you a citizen of the United States? | Q. ¿Es Vd. ciudadano de los Estados Unidos? |
| A. No, sir, I am a citizen of Mexico. | A. No señor, soy ciudadano de México. |
| Q. Have you ever been examined by a Special Inquiry Officer before? | Q. ¿Ha sido Vd. examinado antes por un Juez de la Inmigración? |
| A. Yes, sir, I was examined once before. | A. Sí, señor, me examinaron (fuí examinado) una vez antes. |
| Q. The Special Inquiry Officer is going to question you concerning your right to be and remain in the United States. Are you willing to swear to the statements which you (may) make? | Q. El Juez de la Inmigración va a interrogarle (hacerle preguntas) tocante a su derecho de estar y quedarse en los Estados Unidos. ¿Está Vd. dispuesto a jurar a las declaraciones que Vd. haga? |
| A. Yes, sir, I will do so if he so desires. | A. Sí, señor, lo haré si él lo desea. |
| Q. Raise your right hand. Do you solemnly swear that the statement that you are about to make will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God? | Q. Alce (levante) Vd. la mano derecha. ¿Jura Vd. solemnemente que la declaración que Vd. está para hacer será la verdad, la verdad entera, y nada más que la verdad, que Dios le ayude? |
| A. I do (swear it). | A. Lo juro. |
| Q. Did you come to the United States to accept an offer of employment? | Q. ¿Vino Vd. a los Estados Unidos para aceptar una oferta de empleo? |
| A. Yes, sir, a brother-in-law of mine who lives in Juarez introduced me to a rancher, and this man wanted me to go to his ranch near El Paso to work. | A. Sí señor, un cuñado mío que vive en Juárez me presentó a un ranchero, y este hombre quería que yo fuera a su rancho cerca de El Paso para trabajar. |
| Q. Did you accept this offer immediately? | Q. ¿Aceptó Vd. esta oferta inmediatamente? |
| A. Yes, I decided that I would be able to earn more money in the United States. | A. Sí, decidí que podría ganar más dinero en los Estados Unidos. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. Did you leave your family in Mexico? | Q. ¿Dejó Vd. a su familia en México? |
| A. Yes, sir. | A. Sí, señor. |
| Q. At what place did you meet (become acquainted with) the man? | Q. ¿En qué lugar conoció Vd. al hombre? |
| A. I met him in a grocery store. | A. Le conocí en una tienda de abarrotes. |
| Q. You are advised that the making of false statements or the concealment of material facts in any way is against the law, and if you do so, you will be subject to a fine and a prison sentence. Do you thoroughly understand this? | Q. Se le avisa que el hacer declaraciones falsas o el ocultar hechos esenciales es en contra de la ley, y que si Vd. lo hace, estará sujeto a una multa y a una sentencia en la prisión. ¿Entiende Vd. esto completamente? |
| A. Yes, sir. | A. Sí, señor. |
| Q. Do you wish to secure the services of counsel? | Q. ¿Desea (quiere) Vd. conseguir los servicios de un consejero (abogado)? |
| A. I do not have the money to pay a lawyer's fees. | A. No tengo el dinero con que pagar los derechos de un abogado. |

## PRACTICE DIALOGUE NO. 6

| | |
|---|---|
| Q. What kind of immigration papers do you have (on you)? | Q. ¿Qué clase de papeles de inmigración trae Vd.? |
| A. I have here my seaman's book. | A. Aquí traigo mi cartilla de marinero. |
| Q. From what ship did you land? | Q. ¿De qué vapor (buque) se desembarcó Vd.? |
| A. From the ship, "Santa Maria". This is the third ship on which I have worked since becoming a seaman. | A. Del vapor la "Santa María". Este es el tercer vapor en el que he trabajado desde que me hice marinero. |
| Q. When and where did you sign on this vessel? | Q. ¿Cuándo y dónde firmó Vd. la lista de este vapor? |
| A. I have signed up in Argentina last year. | A. Firmé la lista en Argentina el año pasado. |
| Q. On arriving in the United States, were you discharged or did you leave the ship voluntarily? | Q. Al llegar a los Estados Unidos, ¿le despidieron a Vd. o salió Vd. del vapor voluntariamente? |
| A. I left voluntarily. | A. Yo salí voluntariamente. |
| Q. What is the longest period of time that you have been here in the United States? | Q. ¿Cuál es la temporada más larga que ha estado Vd. aquí en los Estados Unidos? |
| A. A ship once left me in Boston, and I could not get another one for two months. | A. Una vez un buque me dejó en Bóston, y no pude coger otro por dos meses. |
| Q. You know that it is necessary for you to put up (deposit) a bond, don't you? | Q. Vd. sabe que es necesario que Vd. ponga (deposite) una fianza, ¿verdad? |
| A. Yes, I understand that. | A. Sí, yo entiendo eso. |

### *En la Sala de Espera*

Acabamos de llegar a la estación. El tren de Chicago ha de llegar a las seis y ahora faltan diez para las seis. El tren no llega hasta las seis y media. Mucha gente baja del tren. Algunos van a quedarse en El Paso, y otros quieren algo que comer o beber antes de la salida del tren a las siete y cuarto. Todo el mundo está muy ocupado. Los porteros meten las maletas en los automóbiles. Un hombre viejo va al teléfono y llama un taxi. El viejo sube al carro y dice—Al Hotel Colón.—El chofer guía (maneja) el carro con cuidado porque no quiere chocar con otro carro. Hay muchos choques en las ciudades grandes.

Nos fijamos en (notamos a) un hombre que está sentado en la sala de espera leyendo un diario. Él está bien vestido. Lleva sombrero azul, traje gris, camisa blanca, corbata listada, y zapatos negros. Le saludamos y empezamos a placticar. Nos dice que es dueño de una mina en Toltec, México, y que ha venido a los Estados Unidos para comprar unos motores, y otra maquinaria. Su permiso es válido por tres semanas. El va a Denver para hacer las compras y entonces piensa regresar a México por el puerto de Nogales. Nos despedimos y hablamos con otros.

### *Pasajeros de los Trenes de Carga*

**hoy día**—nowaday
**hacer calor**—to be warm
**por tren**—by train
**pan duro**—stale bread
**hacer frío**—to be cold
**de vez en cuando**—from time to time

Hoy día muchos hombres y algunas mujeres viajan de una parte del país a otra en los trenes de carga. La mayor parte de ellos busca trabajo, pero hay algunos que no quieren trabajar. Pasan el verano en el norte donde hace fresco, y el invierno en el oeste o en el sur donde hace calor. Siempre buscan un lugar en donde hace buen tiempo. Los inspectores de la Patrulla hablan con muchas de estas personas porque muchos extranjeros viajan por tren también. Cuando se paran los trenes, los viajeros bajan de los furgones para tomar agua o para comer algo. Casi todos llevan una mochila. Generalmente, compran pan duro, café, y otras cosas baratas y preparan la comida en un fuego (lumbre) que hacen en la yarda del ferrocarril o cerca de ella. Algunos de ellos duermen en el suelo, mientras que otros pasan la noche en un furgón. Cuando hace frío se envuelven en cobijas y periódicos y así no sienten el frío. Así se reunen americanos, alemanes, franceses, italianos, mexicanos, y otras nacionalidades. De vez en cuando trabajan unos pocos días para ganar un poco de dinero, y entonces se van a otra ciudad.

### *Mi Trabajo*

**a pie**—on foot
**por supesto**—of course
**llevar**—to wear
**a todo correr**—at full speed
**como**—about
**al fin**—at last
**hacer preguntas**—to ask questions
**tener que** (plus) infinitive—to have to

Soy miembro de la Patrulla de la Frontera. Tengo sólo seis meses en esta organización pero me gusta el trabajo. El jueves pasado mi compañero y yo caminábamos por el camino de Nogales a Tucsón cuando vimos a un hombre andando a pie por el traque. Por supuesto llevábamos el uniforme de la patrulla, y cuando nos vió, empezó a correr. Paramos el carro y le seguimos a pie a todo correr. Muy pronto él desapareció en el monte (chaparral). Le buscamos como media hora y al fin le encontramos escondido en el sacate. Nos dijo que iba a Colorado para trabajar en las labores de betabel. Dijo que había nacido en Tucsón pero después de hacerle más preguntas supimos que era de México. Había cruzado la línea a pie la noche anterior. Le llevamos a la Oficina de Inmigración. El otro inspector le tomó las impresiones (huellas) de los dedos (digitales).—Afloje Vd. la mano.—dijo el inspector.—Mire Vd. la pared; no tiene que hacer nada; no me ayude; haré todo.—Los archivos de nuestra oficina mostraron (revelaron) que él había sido deportado dos veces antes.

### *El Contrabandista*

**pasar de contrabando**—to smuggle
**la caída del sol**—sunset
**tener prisa**—to be in a hurry
**a verlo**—let's see it

Un hombre nos había dicho que cierto contrabandista iba a pasar de contrabando a dos personas, a un hombre y a una mujer. Un poco después de la caída del sol, fuimos cosa de diez millas afuera de los límites de la ciudad y paramos nuestro carro en una curva. Colocamos un signo de carretera al lado de la carretera y pusimos una luz roja delante del signo.

No sabíamos en que clase de automóvil (coche) vendría el contrabandista, pero teníamos una buena descripción de él; por eso, tuvimos que detener cada carro. Como a las diez llegó un sedán negro. El carro caminó cincuenta pies más allá del signo antes de parar.

Dentro del carro había el chófer y una mujer en el asiento delantero (de enfrente). Dos maletas estaban en el asiento de atrás (trasero). El chófer parecía excitado y nervioso. Nos dijo que no paró el carro más pronto porque los frenos del carro necesitaban reparos. Dijo que tenía prisa porque su esposa—la señora a su lado—estaba enferma. Ella estaba envuelta en una cobija. Pronto reconocimos al contrabandista. El tenía una tarjeta de identificación de ciudadano. La mujer también tenía una tarjeta de ciudadana, pero al examinarla cuidadosamente notamos que el retrato en la tarjeta no era suyo. El contrabandista le había comprado la tarjeta a un muchacho en Juárez, el cual la había hallado en la calle.—¿Dónde está el esposo de esta mujer?—preguntó mi compañero.—¿Quién sabé? Venimos solos.—Vamos a ver el compartimiento de atrás.—No hay nada allí—dijo el hombre.—A verlo entonces.—Él abrió el compartimiento y allí estaba el esposo de la mujer.

—¡Qué mala suerte!—dijo ella.—¡Ojalá que no hubiéramos venido ilegalmente a los Estados Unidos!—

### *Declaraciones Falsas*

**a cuatro patas**—on all fours
**poco más o menos**—about
**hacer una visita**—to visit; to make a visit
**fe de bautismo**—baptismal certificate

Una cerca de alambre es la línea internacional (divisoria) entre los Estados Unidos y México. Hay muchos hoyos en la cerca. Una noche mi compañero y yo vimos a un hombre andando cerca de la línea. Este hombre se acercó a un hoyo, dio una mirada para ver si había gente cerca de aquel lugar, y no viendo a nadie, pasó por el hoyo a gatas. Al vernos corrió por las yerbas y se escondió detrás de una casa abandonada. Nosotros le (lo) arrestamos y él nos dijo:—Llegué a Nogales, Arizona, poco más o menos a las cuatro de la tarde con mis suegros y mi esposa. Vinimos de Tucsón a hacer una visita a Nogales, Sonora. El carro era un Chevrolet verde y era de mi suegro. Al llegar a Nogales, Arizona, los otros se fueron a México, pero yo me quedé en este lado porque había perdido mi certificado de nacimiento. He mandado setenta y cinco centavos a Phoenix para que me envíen otro. Después de esperar dos horas decidí ir a Nogales, Sonora, creyendo que mis suegros y mi esposa podrían ayudarme a regresar por la garita. Pasé por la garita a México, pero no pude encontrarlos en ninguna parte. Pasé unas dos o tres horas en la plaza y en las cantinas. Al presentarme a la garita americana el inspector me preguntó si era ciudadano de los Estado Unidos. Yo le dije que sí. Pero como no traía certificado de nacimiento ni otra prueba de mi nacimiento, él no me permitió entrar y luego brinqué la línea.

—Nací en Tucsón; iba (asistía) a las escuelas en Tucsón. Conozco al alguacil del condado. Ahora trabajo con la Peterson Company, que está haciendo una película al oeste de Tucsón. La película se llama "La Vida del Oeste." Tengo que llegar a mi trabajo a las ocho de la mañana.

Le registramos y hallamos dos dólares en moneda de oro. Toda la ropa que traía era hecha en los Estados Unidos, pero un archivo de nuestra oficina mostró que él había vuelto voluntariamente a México hacía un año en lugar de ser deportado. Mientras estuvo en México, él recibió un peródico de Tucsón, y así supo lo que ocurría allí.

### *Animales Domésticos y Silvestres*

En los ranchos de Texas hay muchos animales. De los animales domésticos, las vacas y los caballos son los más útiles. Los caballos y las mulas se usan para tirar arados, vagones, y para montar. Las vacas dan la leche de la cual se hace mantequilla, crema, queso, y otros alimentos. Comemos la carne del ganado y hacemos cuero de las pieles. Los burros se usan mucho por los mexicanos para llevar cargas de leña, legumbres (verduras), y otras cosas.

Se trasquilan las cabras y los borregos dos veces al año. La lana se vende a los almacenes. La carne de estos animalitos es buena para comer. La carne de los marranos (puercos) es muy buena para comer también y de ella se hacen salchichas. Los gatos cogen ratas y ratones. Los perros son los compañeros del hombre.

Hay muchos animales silvestres en el monte. Mucha gente come la carne de los conejos ye de las liebres. A muchas personas les gusta cazar venados. Es un deporte muy bueno e interesante. Se cazan venados en los meses de noviembre y diciembre.

Las gallinas ponen blanquillos (huevos) que se usan en muchos platos para la comida. Los pollos son buenos para comer. Nosotros comemos los guajalotes (cóconos) generalmente en el día de dar Gracias y en el día de Navidad. La gente del campo cría los animales y entonces se los vende a los comisionistas de las ciudades. También se cazan guajalotes, patos, palomas, codornices, y otras aves. Es muy deportivo tirar a estas aves volantes.

Las pieles de muchos animalitos tales como el coyote, el zorro,

etc., valen mucho dinero y se usan para hacer abrigos, chaquetas, y toda clase de vestidos. Las pieles son mejores en el invierno. Sin los animales y sus productos sería muy difícil vivir.

## SPANISH NAMES

Spanish and Spanish-American people usually use the surname of both parents. Neither is ever considered to be a middle name. In the case of an illegitimate child, usually the surname of the mother only is used.

The surname of the father precedes that of the mother and the two surnames may or may not be joined by the conjunction "y" or by a hyphen. Example: **Juan Romero y Conde, Juan Romero-Conde. Juan** is the given name, **Romero** the surname of the father father and **Conde** the surname of the mother.

In addition, the following variations may be found:

**Juan Conde Romero**
**Juan C. Romero**
**Juan Conde**
**Juan Romero C.**
**Juan Romero**

Legally a Spanish female retains her maiden name after marriage, but it is common practice to drop the surname of the mother and to add that of the husband joined by the preposition **"de."**

For example: **Luisa Romero-Conde** marries **Carlos Villa-Tovar** and is known as **Luisa Romero de Villa.**

Prior to her marriage she was known as: **Luisa Romero-Conde,**
after marriage as: **Luisa Romero de Villa,**
and, should her husband die, as: **Luisa Romero Vda. de Villa.**
**(Vda., viuda—widow)**

If the person gives only one surname it will be necessary to question him further in order to obtain his full and correct name. After a Spanish-speaking person has resided in the United States for some time he may anglicize his name. It must be remembered that a person's signature is not necessarily his full and correct name. This is particularly true of Spanish-speaking persons whose signatures **(firmas)** are often written with many flourishes **(rúbricas).** Whenever there is any doubt as to the correct spelling of a person's name, he should be asked to write it, as wrong names and incorrect spelling make it difficult and often impossible to verify previous records.

Spanish words are more phonetic than English words. However, due to similarity of the sounds of certain letters, differences in the spelling of proper names will be encountered. Examples of a few of these instances follow:

| *Letters* | *Names* |
|---|---|
| s-c | **Seballos**—Ceballos |
| b-v | **Baca**—Vaca |
| c-z | **Celaya**—Zelaya |
| s-z | **Sambrano**—Zambrano |
| ll-y | **Calletano**—Cayetano |
| j-h | **Jaro**—Haro |
| i-e | **Arriola**—Arreola |
| g-j | **Guantes**—Juantes |
| rr-r | **Arredondo**—Aredondo |
| h | Any name with "h" |
| i-y | **Ibarra**—Ybarra |

The prepositions **"de,"** with or without a definite article, **"el,"** etc., appear in a number of Spanish surnames. Formerly the preposition **"de"** was an indication of nobility, but today such a distinction does not exist, and the use of **"de"** is optional. However, it is retained by some families as a part of the surname. Examples: **De Haro, De Lora, Del Campo, Del Valle, De la Torre, De la Rosa, De la O.**

## REGULAR VERBS

### THE THREE CONJUGATIONS

### FIRST CONJUGATION AR

| *Present participle* | *Infinitive* | *Past participle* |
|---|---|---|
| **habl ando** | **habl ar** | **habl ado** |

INDICATIVE MOOD

*Present*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **habl o** | I speak, am speaking, do speak |
| **tú** | **habl as** | you speak, are speaking, do speak |
| **él, ella, Vd.** | **habl a** | he, she, you speak, do speak, etc. |
| **nosotros, as** | **habl amos** | we speak, are speaking, do speak |
| **vosotros, as** | **habl áis** | you speak, are speaking, do speak |
| **ellos, as, Vds.** | **habl an** | they (m-f), you speak, etc. |

*Imperfect*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **habl aba** | I used to speak, was speaking |
| **tú** | **habl abas** | you used to speak, were speaking |
| **él, ella, Vd.** | **habl aba** | he, she, you used to speak, etc. |
| **nosotros, as** | **habl ábamos** | we used to speak, were speaking |
| **vosotros, as** | **habl abais** | you used to speak, were speaking |
| **ellos, as, Vds.** | **habl aban** | they (m-f), you used to speak, etc. |

*Preterite*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **habl é** | I spoke, did speak |
| **tú** | **habl aste** | you spoke, did speak |
| **él, ella, Vd.** | **habl ó** | he, she, you spoke, etc. |
| **nosotros, as** | **habl amos** | we spoke, did speak |
| **vosotros, as** | **habl asteis** | you spoke, did speak |
| **ellos, as, Vds.** | **habl aron** | they (m-f), you spoke, etc. |

*Future*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **hablar é** | I shall or will speak |
| **tú** | **hablar ás** | you shall or will speak |
| **él, ella, Vd.** | **hablar á** | he, she, you shall speak, etc. |
| **nosotros, as** | **hablar emos** | we shall or will speak |
| **vosotros, as** | **hablar éis** | you shall or will speak |
| **ellos, as, Vds.** | **hablar án** | they (m-f), you shall speak, etc. |

*Conditional*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **yo** | **hablar ía** | I would speak |
| **tú** | **hablar ías** | you would speak |
| **él, ella, Vd.** | **hablar ía** | he, she, you would speak |
| **nosotros, as** | **hablar íamos** | we would speak |
| **vosotros, as** | **hablar íais** | you would speak |
| **ellos, as, Vds.** | **hablar ían** | they (m-f), you would speak |

| SECOND CONJUGATION *ER* | THIRD CONJUGATION *IR* |
|---|---|

*Infinitive*

| | |
|---|---|
| **comer** | **recibir** |

*Present participle*

| | |
|---|---|
| **com iendo** | **recib iendo** |

*Past participle*

| | |
|---|---|
| **com ido** | **recib ido** |

INDICATIVE MOOD

*Present*

| | |
|---|---|
| **com o** | **recib o** |
| **com es** | **recib es** |
| **com e** | **recib e** |
| **com emos** | **recib imos** |
| **com éis** | **recib ís** |
| **com en** | **recib en** |

*Imperfect*

| | |
|---|---|
| **com ía** | **recib ía** |
| **com ías** | **recib ías** |
| **com ía** | **recib ía** |
| **com íamos** | **recib íamos** |
| **com íais** | **recib íais** |
| **com ían** | **recib ían** |

*Preterite*

| | |
|---|---|
| **com í** | **recib í** |
| **com iste** | **recib iste** |
| **com ió** | **recib ió** |
| **com imos** | **recib imos** |
| **com isteis** | **recib isteis** |
| **com ieron** | **recib ieron** |

*Future*

| | |
|---|---|
| **comer é** | **recibir é** |
| **comer ás** | **recibir ás** |
| **comer á** | **recibir á** |
| **comer emos** | **recibir emos** |
| **comer éis** | **recibir éis** |
| **comer án** | **recibir án** |

*Conditional*

| | |
|---|---|
| **comer ía** | **recibir ía** |
| **comer ías** | **recibir ías** |
| **comer ía** | **recibir ía** |
| **comer íamos** | **recibir íamos** |
| **comer íais** | **recibir íais** |
| **comer ían** | **recibir ían** |

## COMPOUND TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD

The compound tenses are formed by conjugating the auxiliary verb **"haber"** in the proper tense preceding the past participle of the main verb.

### FIRST CONJUGATION AR

*Infinitive*

**haber habl ado**—to have spoken

*Participle*

**habiendo habl ado**—having spoken

INDICATIVE MOOD

*Present perfect*

| | |
|---|---|
| **yo he habl ado** | I have spoken |
| **tú has habl ado** | you have spoken |
| **él, ella, Vd. ha habl ado** | he has, she has, you have spoken |
| **nosotros, as hemos habl ado** | we have spoken |
| **vosotros, as habéis habl ado** | you have spoken |
| **ellos, as, Vds., han habl ado** | they (m-f), you have spoken |

*Pluperfect (past perfect)*[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| **yo había habl ado** | I had spoken |
| **tú habías habl ado** | you had spoken |
| **él, ella, Vd. había habl ado** | he, she, you had spoken |

---

[1] The preterite perfect has been omitted throughout this work and is, therefore, omitted in this treatment of verbs. The simple preterite may replace the preterite perfect at any time. Any time a past perfect is needed the pluperfect may be used.

| | |
|---|---|
| **nosotros, as habíamos habl ado** | we had spoken |
| **vosotros, as habíais habl ado** | you had spoken |
| **ellos, as, Vds., habían habl ado** | they (m-f), you had spoken |

*Future perfect*

| | |
|---|---|
| **yo habré habl ado** | I shall or will have spoken |
| **tú habrás habl ado** | you shall or will have spoken |
| **él, ella, Vd. habrá habl ado** | he, she, you shall have spoken |
| **nosotros, as habremos habl ado** | we shall or will have spoken |
| **vosotros, as habréis habl ado** | you shall or will have spoken |
| **ellos, as, Vds. habrán habl ado** | they (m-f), you will have spoken |

*Conditional perfect*

| | |
|---|---|
| **yo habría habl ado** | I would have spoken |
| **tú habrías habl ado** | you would have spoken |
| **él, ella, Vd. habría habl ado** | he, she, you would have, etc. |
| **nosotros, as habríamos habl ado** | we would have spoken |
| **vosotros, as habríais habl ado** | you would have spoken |
| **ellos, as, Vds. habrían habl ado** | they (m-f), you would have, etc. |

| SECOND CONJUGATION *ER* | THIRD CONJUGATION *IR* |
|---|---|
| *Infinitive* | |
| **haber com ido** | **haber recib ido** |
| *Participle* | |
| **habiendo com ido** | **habiendo recib ido** |
| INDICATIVE MOOD | |
| *Present perfect* | |
| **he com ido** | **he recib ido** |
| **has com ido** | **has recib ido** |
| **ha com ido** | **ha recib ido** |
| **hemos com ido** | **hemos recib ido** |
| **habéis com ido** | **habéis recib ido** |
| **han com ido** | **han recim ido** |
| *Pluperfect (past perfect)* | |
| **había com ido** | **había recib ido** |
| **habías com ido** | **habías recib ido** |
| **había com ido** | **había recib ido** |
| **habíamos com ido** | **habíamos recib ido** |
| **habíais com ido** | **habíais recib ido** |
| **habían com ido** | **habían recib ido** |

*Future perfect*

| | |
|---|---|
| habré com ido | habré recib ido |
| habrás com ido | habrás recib ido |
| habrá com ido | habrá recib ido |
| habremos com ido | habremos recib ido |
| habréis com ido | habréis recib ido |
| habrán com ido | habrán recib ido |

*Conditional perfect*

| | |
|---|---|
| habría com ido | habría recib ido |
| habrías com ido | habrías recib ido |
| habría com ido | habría recib ido |
| habríamos com ido | habríamos recib ido |
| habríais com ido | habríais recib ido |
| habrían com ido | habrían recib ido |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

*Present*

| **First Conjugation** | **Second Conjugation** | **Third Conjugation** |
|---|---|---|
| ***Hablar*** | ***Comer*** | ***Recibir*** |
| habl e | com a | recib a |
| habl es | com as | recib as |
| habl e | com a | recib a |
| habl emos | com amos | recib amos |
| habl éis | com áis | recib áis |
| habl en | com an | recib an |

*Imperfect "ra" form*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| habl ara | com iera | recib iera |
| habl aras | com ieras | recib ieras |
| habl ara | com iera | recib iera |
| habl áramos | com iéramos | recib iéramos |
| habl arais | com ierais | recib ierais |
| habl aran | com ieran | recib ieran |

## COMPOUND TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

*Present perfect*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| haya hablado | haya comido | haya recibido |
| hayas hablado | hayas comido | hayas recibido |
| haya hablado | haya comido | haya recibido |
| hayamos hablado | hayamos comido | hayamos recibido |
| hayáis hablado | hayáis comido | hayáis recibido |
| hayan hablado | hayan comido | hayan recibido |

*Pluperfect "ra"*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| hubiera hablado | hubiera comido | hubiera recibido |
| hubieras hablado | hubieras comido | hubieras recibido |
| hubiera hablado | hubiera comido | hubiera recibido |
| hubiéramos hablado | hubiéramos comido | hubiéramos recibido |
| hubierais hablado | hubierais comido | hubierais recibido |
| hubieran hablado | hubieran comido | hubieran recibido |

### IMPERATIVE MOOD[2]

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| habla tú | come tú | recibe tú |
| hablad vosotros | comed vosotros | recibid vosotros |

### SUBJUNCTIVE-IMPERATIVE[2]

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| hable Vd. | coma Vd. | reciba Vd. |
| hablen Vds. | coman Vds. | reciban Vds. |

## ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGING VERBS

In Spanish the sound of the final consonant of the stem of the infinitive is generally maintained throughout the conjugation of the verb. In order to do so, it is sometimes necessary to make certain changes in the spelling (orthography) of the stem before attaching the endings. Pronouncing the word will often help the beginner to identify the verb as orthographically changing rather than irregular. The following paragraphs list these changes. The orthographical changes are shown in capital letters in the examples following the rules.

### RULES FOR MAKING ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES IN VERBS

1. c of car changes to qu before e.
2. g of gar changes to gu before e.
3. gu of guar changes to gü before e.
4. g of ger and gir changes to j before a or o.
5. gu of guir drops the u before a or o.
6. qu of quir changes to c before a or o.
7. z of zar changes to c before e.
8. cer and cir preceded by a consonant change c to z before a or o.
9. ll and ñ followed by ie or ió drop the i.

---

[2] The imperative mood is used for the familiar command. The third person singular and plural of the subjunctive is used for the polite command. Some grammarians call this use of the subjunctive the "subjunctive-imperative" as so designated above.

10. i unaccented between two vowels changes to y.
11. cer and cir preceded by a vowel insert z before c before a or o.
12. uir unless u is silent, insert y before a, e, or o (strengthens).
13. Some verbs ending in iar and uar require the written accent mark (′) over the i or u in the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd person singular, and 3rd person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive and the singular imperative.

### EXAMPLES

**1. Buscar**

| *Preterite indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **busQUé** | **busQUe** |
| **buscaste** | **busQUes** |
| **buscó** | **busQUe** |
| **buscamos** | **busQUemos** |
| **buscasteis** | **busQUéis** |
| **buscaron** | **busQUen** |

**2. Llegar**

| *Preterite indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **lleGUé** | **lleGUe** |
| **llegaste** | **lleGUes** |
| **llegó** | **lleGUe** |
| **llegamos** | **lleGUemos** |
| **llegasteis** | **lleGUéis** |
| **llegaron** | **lleGUen** |

**3. Averiguar**

| *Preterite indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **averiGÜé** | **averiGÜe** |
| **averiguaste** | **averiGÜes** |
| **averigué** | **averiGÜe** |
| **averiguamos** | **averiGÜemos** |
| **averiguasteis** | **averiGÜéis** |
| **averiguaron** | **averiGÜen** |

**4. Coger**

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **coJo** | **coJa** |
| **coges** | **coJas** |
| **coge** | **coJa** |
| **cogemos** | **coJamos** |
| **cogéis** | **coJáis** |
| **cogen** | **coJan** |

**5. Distinguir**

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **distinGo** | **distinGa** |
| **distingues** | **distinGas** |
| **distingue** | **distinGa** |
| **distinguimos** | **distinGamos** |
| **distinguís** | **distinGáis** |
| **distinguen** | **distinGan** |

**6. Delinquir**

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **delinCo** | **delinCa** |
| **delinques** | **delinCas** |
| **delinque** | **delinCa** |
| **delinquimos** | **delinCamos** |
| **delinquís** | **delinCáis** |
| **delinquen** | **delinCan** |

**7. Empezar**

| *Preterite indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **empeCé** | **empieCe** |
| **empezaste** | **empieCes** |
| **empezó** | **empieCe** |
| **empezamos** | **empeCemos** |
| **empezasteis** | **empeCéis** |
| **empezaron** | **empieCen** |

**8. Vencer**

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **venZo** | **venZa** |
| **vences** | **venZas** |
| **vence** | **venZa** |
| **vencemos** | **venZamos** |
| **vencéis** | **venZáis** |
| **vencen** | **venZan** |

### 9. Bullir

| *Preterite indicative* | *Present participle* |
|---|---|
| **bullí** | **bull(i)endo** |
| **bulliste** | |
| **bull(i)ó** | |
| **bullimos** | |
| **bullisteis** | |
| **bull(i)eron** | |

### 10. Leer

| *Preterite indicative* | *Present participle* |
|---|---|
| **leí** | **leYendo** |
| **leíste** | |
| **leYó** | |
| **leímos** | |
| **leísteis** | |
| **leYeron** | |

### 11. Conocer

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* |
|---|---|
| **conoZco** | **conoZca** |
| **conoces** | **conoZcas** |
| **conoce** | **conoZca** |
| **conocemos** | **conoZcamos** |
| **conocen** | **conoZcan** |

### 12. Construir

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* | *Preterite indicative* | *Present participle* | *Imperative* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **construYo** | **construYa** | **construí** | **construYendo** | **construYe** |
| **construYes** | **construYas** | **construiste** | | |
| **construYe** | **construYa** | **construYó** | | |
| **construimos** | **construYamos** | **construimos** | | |
| **construís** | **construYáis** | **construisteis** | | |
| **construYen** | **construYan** | **construYeron** | | |

### 13. Enviar

| *Present indicative* | *Present subjunctive* | *Imperative* |
|---|---|---|
| **envío** | **envíe** | |
| **envías** | **envíes** | **envía** |
| **envía** | **envíe** | |
| **enviamos** | **enviemos** | |
| **enviáais** | **enviéis** | |
| **envían** | **envíen** | |

## IRREGULAR VERBS

| *Present ind.* | *Present subj.* | *Imp. ind.* | *Pret. ind.* | *Fut. ind.* | *Cond. ind.* | *Imp.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | **andar** | | | |
| **caber** | **caber** | | **caber** | **caber** | **caber** | |
| **caer** | **caer** | | | | | |
| | | | **conducir** | | | |
| **dar** | **dar** | | **dar** | | | |
| **decir** | **decir** | | **decir** | **decir** | **decir** | **decir** |

| *Present ind.* | *Present subj.* | *Imp. ind.* | *Pret. ind.* | *Fut. ind.* | *Cond. ind.* | *Imp.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **estar** | **estar** | | **estar** | | | |
| **haber** | **haber** | | **haber** | **haber** | **haber** | |
| **ir** | **ir** | **ir** | **ir** | | | **ir** |
| **oír** | **oír** | | | | | |
| | | | **poder** | **poder** | **poder** | |
| **poner** | **poner** | | **poner** | **poner** | **poner** | **poner** |
| | | | **querer** | **querer** | **querer** | |
| **saber** | **saber** | | **saber** | **saber** | **saber** | |
| **salir** | **salir** | | | **salir** | **salir** | **salir** |
| **ser** | **ser** | **ser** | **ser** | | | |
| **tener** | **tener** | | **tener** | **tener** | **tener** | **tener** |
| **traer** | **traer** | | **traer** | | | |
| **valer** | **valer** | | | **valer** | **valer** | **valer** |
| **venir** | **venir** | | **venir** | **venir** | **venir** | **venir** |
| **ver** | **ver** | **ver** | | | | |

There are only twenty-two irregular verbs in common use in the Spanish language. Many of these verbs are irregular in several tenses, but none is irregular in all tenses.

In the present indicative tense eighteen are irregular. **"Haber,"** **"ir,"** and **"ser"** are completely irregular in this tense. **"Estar"** bears the written accent in the third person singular and plural. All others are irregular only in the first person singular, and with the exception of **"dar"** and **"saber"** the irregularity appears only in the stem of the verb. The endings are regular. **"Decir,"** **"tener,"** and **"venir"** follow the rule for radical changing verbs in the second and third persons singular and the third person plural.

The same eighteen verbs are also irregular in the present subjunctive tense. All others are regular in this tense. Only **"haber,"** **"ir,"** **"saber,"** and **"ser"** are completely irregular. **"Dar"** and **"estar"** are regular except for the written accent. The remaining twelve verbs are conjugated in this tense by attaching the regular present subjunctive endings to the irregular stem of the first person singular of the present indicative.

In the imperfect indicative tense **"ser,"** **"ir"** and **"ver"** are the only verbs that are irregular. **"Ver"** is irregular only in that it retains the "e" of the infinitive ending before attaching the regular endings.

There are seventeen verbs irregular in the preterite indicative tense. Fourteen of these have the same irregular endings that are attached to an irregular stem. **"Ser"** and **"ir"** are conjugated alike in this tense. **"Dar"** is irregular in that it is conjugated like a regular verb of the second or third conjugation.

There are twelve verbs that are irregular in the future indicative tense. The irregularity appears only in the stem of the verb.

The same twelve verbs are irregular in the conditional tense and to the same extent.

There are only eight verbs that are irregular in the imperative mood (familiar command). They are irregular in the singular. **"Valer"** has two familiar singular forms; **"val,"** irregular and **"vale,"** regular.

The imperfect subjunctive has not been listed as irregular as it may be conjugated by attaching the regular endings to the stem of the third person plural of the preterite indicative; however, the following two rules for orthographically changing verbs must be kept in mind:

(1) An unaccented "i" between two vowels is changed to "y."

**Leer—leyera, leyeras, leyera, leyéramos, leyerais, leyeran**
**Caer—cayera, cayeras, cayera, cayéramos, cayerais, cayeran**

(2) Those verbs whose stem ends in "j" drop the "i" of the imperfect subjunctive endings.

**Traer—trajera, trajeras, trajera, trajéramos, trajerais, trajeran**
**Decir—dijera, dijeras, dijera, dijéramos, dijeran**

A simplified rule to follow in forming the imperfect subjunctive is: Drop the final "on" from the third person plural of the preterite indicative tense and to the remaining stem attach the following endings:

**a, as, a, amos, ais, an**

The verb **"reir"** (to laugh) is an orthographically changing verb, but because it undergoes so many changes it has been conjugated, but not listed as irregular, with this group of verbs.

The compounds of these verbs are irregular to the same extent as the "parent" verb; that is, **"obtener"** has the same irregularities as **"tener."**

In the following conjugations of the irregular verbs, regular tenses are not conjugated. However, if a verb is orthographically changing, it will be conjugated in such tense or tenses.

Verbs that have irregular past participles are not shown in the table of irregular but are listed in the following conjugations.

Verbs that appear to be irregular in the present participle are either orthographically changing verbs or radically changing verbs of the third classification.

### *ANDAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Preterite indicative | **anduve, anduviste, anduvo, anduvimos, anduvisteis, anduvieron** |

### *CABER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **quepo, cabes, cabe, cabemos, cabéis, caben** |
| Present subjunctive | **quepa, quepas, quepa, quepamos, quepáis, quepan** |
| Preterite indicative | **cupe, cupiste, cupo, cupimos, cupisteis, cupieron** |
| Future indicative | **cabré, cabrás, cabrá, cabremos, cabréis, cabrán** |
| Conditional | **cabría, cabrías, cabría, cabríamos, cabríais, cabrían** |

### *CONDUCIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **conduzco, conduces, conduce, conducimos, conducís, conducen** |
| Present subjunctive | **conduzca, conduzca, conduzca, conduzcamos, conduzcáis, conduzcan** |
| Preterite indicative | **conduje, condujiste, condujo, condujimos, condujisteis, condujeron** |

### *DAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **doy, das, da, damos, dais, dan** |
| Present subjunctive | **dé, des, dé, demos, deis, den** |
| Preterite indicative | **dí, diste, dió, dimos, disteis, dieron** |

### *DECIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **digo, dices, dice, decimos, decís, dicen** |
| Present subjunctive | **diga, digas, diga, digamos, digáis, digan** |
| Preterite indicative | **dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron** |
| Future indicative | **diré, dirás, dirá, diremos, dirés, dirán** |
| Conditional | **diría, dirías, diría, diríamos, diríais, dirían** |
| Imperative | **di decid** |
| Present participle | **diciendo** |
| Past participle | **dicho** |

### *ESTAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **estoy, estás, está, estamos, están** |
| Present subjunctive | **esté, estés, esté, estemos, estéis, estén** |
| Preterite indicative | **estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron** |
| Imperative | **está estad** |

### *HABER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **he, has, ha, hemos, habéis, han** |
| Present subjunctive | **haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan** |
| Preterite indicative | **hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron** |
| Future indicative | **habré, habrás, habrá, habremos, habréis, habrán** |
| Conditional | **habría, habrías, habría, habríamos, habríais, habrían** |

### *HACER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **hago, haces, hace, hacemos, hacéis, hacen** |
| Present subjunctive | **haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan** |
| Preterite indicative | **hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron** |
| Future indicative | **haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán** |
| Conditional | **haría, harías, haría, haríamos, haríais, harían** |
| Imperative | **haz haced** |
| Past participle | **hecho** |

### *IR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van** |
| Present subjunctive | **vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayáis, vayan** |
| Imperfect indicative | **iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban** |
| Preterite indicative | **fuí, fuiste, fué, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron** |
| Imperative | **ve id** |
| Present participle | **yendo** |

### *OIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **oigo, oyes, oye, oímos, oís, oyen** |
| Present subjunctive | **oiga, oigas, oiga, oigamos, oigáis, oigan** |
| Preterite indicative | **oí, oíste, oyó, oímos, oísteis, oyeron** |
| Imperative | **oye oíd** |
| Present participle | **oyendo** |
| Past participle | **oído** |

### *PODER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Preterite indicative | **pude, pudiste, pudo, pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron** |
| Future indicative | **podré, podrás, podrá, podremos, podréis, podrán** |
| Conditional | **podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podríais, podrían** |
| Present participle | **pudiendo** |

### *PONER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **pongo, pones, pone, ponemos, ponéis, ponen** |
| Present subjunctive | **ponga, pongas, ponga, pongamos, pongáis, pongan** |
| Preterite indicative | **puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron** |
| Future indicative | **pondré, pondrás, pondrá, pondremos, pondréis, pondrán** |
| Conditional | **pondría, pondrías, pondría, pondríamos, pondríais, pondrían** |
| Imperative | **pon poned** |
| Past participle | **puesto** |

### *QUERER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Preterite indicative | **quise, quisiste, quiso, quisimos, quisisteis, quisieron** |
| Future indicative | **querré, querrás, querrá, querremos, querréis, querrán** |
| Conditional | **querría, querrías, querría, querríamos, querríais, querrían** |

### *REIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **río, ríes, ríe, reímos, reís, ríen** |
| Present subjunctive | **ría, rías, ría, ríamos, ríais, rían** |
| Preterite indicative | **reí, reíste, rió, reímos, reísteis, rieron** |
| Imperative | **ríe reíd** |
| Present participle | **riendo** |
| Past participle | **reído** |

### SABER

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | sé, sabes, sabe, sabemos, sabéis, saben |
| Present subjunctive | sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, eepáis, sepan |
| Preterite indicative | supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron |
| Future indicative | sabré, sabrás, sabrá, sabremos, sabréis, sabrán |
| Conditional | sabría, sabrías, sabría, sabríamos, sabríais, sabrían |

### SALIR

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | salgo, sales, sale, salimos, salís, salen |
| Present subjunctive | salga, salgas, salga, salgamos, salgáis, salgan |
| Future indicative | saldré, saldrás, saldrá, saldremos, saldréis, saldrán |
| Conditional | saldría, saldrías, saldría, saldríamos, saldríais, saldrían |
| Imperative | sal salid |

### SER

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son |
| Present subjunctive | sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean |
| Imperfect indicative | era, eras, era, éramos, erais, eran |
| Preterite indicative | fuí, fuiste, fué, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron |
| Imperative | sé sed |

### TENER

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | tengo, tienes, tiene, tenemos, tenéis, tienen |
| Present subjunctive | tenga, tengas, tenga, tengamos, tengáis, tengan |
| Preterite indicative | tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron |
| Future indicative | tendré, tendrás, tendrá, tendremos, tendréis, tendrán |
| Conditional | tendría, tendrías, tendría, tendríamos, tendríais, tendrían |
| Imperative | ten tened |

### TRAER

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | traigo, traes, trae, traemos, traéis, traen |
| Present subjunctive | traiga, traigas, traiga, traigamos, traigáis, traigan |
| Preterite indicative | traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron |
| Present participle | trayendo |
| Past participle | traído |

### VALER

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | valgo, vales, vale, valemos, valéis, valen |
| Present subjunctive | valga, valgas, valga, valgamos, valgáis, valgan |
| Future indicative | valdré, valdrás, valdrá, valdremos, valdréis, valdrán |
| Conditional | valdría, valdrías, valdría, valdríamos, valdríais, valdrían |
| Imperative | val(e) valed |

### VENIR

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | vengo, vienes, viene, venimos, venís, vienen |
| Present subjunctive | venga, vengas, venga, vengamos, vengáis, vengan |
| Preterite indicative | vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron |
| Future indicative | vendré, vendrás, vendrá, vendremos, vendréis, vendrán |
| Conditional | vendría, vendrías, vendría, vendríamos, vendríais, vendrían |
| Imperative | ven venid |
| Present participle | viniendo |

### *VER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **veo, ves, ve, vemos, veis, ven** |
| Present subjunctive | **vea, veas, vea, veamos, veáis, vean** |
| Imperfect indicative | **veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían** |
| Past participle | **visto** |

## RADICAL CHANGING VERBS

### *CERRAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **cierro, cierras, cierra, cerramos, cerráis, cierran** |
| Present subjunctive | **cierre, cierres, cierre, cerremos, cerréis, cierren** |

### *DORMIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **duermo, duermes, duerme, dormimos, dormís, duermen** |
| Present subjunctive | **duerma, duermas, duerma, durmamos, durmáis, duerman** |
| Preterite | **dormí, dormiste, durmió, dormimos, dormisteis, durmieron** |
| Present participle | **durmiendo** |

### *EMPEZAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **empiezo, empiezas, empieza, empezamos, empezáis, empiezan** |
| Present subjunctive | **empiece, empieces, empiece, empecemos, empezéis, empiecen** |

### *ENCONTRAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **encuentro, encuentras, encuentra, encontramos, encontráis, encuentran** |
| Present subjunctive | **encuentre, encuentres, encuentre, encontremos, encontréis, encuentren** |

### *ENTENDER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **entiendo, entiendes, entiende, entendemos, entendéis, entienden** |
| Present subjunctive | **entienda, entiendas, entienda, entendamos, entendáis, entiendan** |

### *MENTIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **miento, mientes, miente, mentimos, mentís, mienten** |
| Present subjunctive | **mienta, mientas, mienta, mintamos, mintáis, mientan** |
| Preterite | **mentí, mentiste, mintió, mentimos, mentisteis, mintieron** |
| Present participle | **mintiendo** |

### *MORIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **muero, mueres, muere, morimos, morís, mueren** |
| Present subjunctive | **muera, mueras, muera, muramos, muráis, mueran** |
| Preterite | **morí, moriste, murió, morimos, moristeis, murieron** |
| Present participle | **muriendo** |

### *PEDIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **pido, pides, pide, pedimos, pedís, piden** |
| Present subjunctive | **pida, pidas, pida, pidamos, pidáis, pidan** |
| Preterite | **pedí, pediste, pidió, pedimos, pedisteis, pidieron** |
| Present participle | **pidiendo** |

### *PENSAR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **pienso, piensas, piensa, pensamos, pensáis, piensan** |
| Present subjunctive | **piense, pienses, piense, pensemos, penséis, piensen** |

### *PERDER*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **pierdo, pierdes, pierde, perdemos, perdéis, pierden** |
| Present subjunctive | **pierda, pierdas, pierda, perdamos, perdáis, pierdan** |

### *REPETIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **repito, repites, repite, repetimos, repetís, repiten** |
| Present subjunctive | **repita, repitas, repita, repitamos, repitáis, repitan** |
| Preterite | **repetí, repetiste, repitió, repetimos, repetisteis, repitieron** |
| Present participle | **repitiendo** |

### *SEGUIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **sigo, sigues, sigue, seguimos, seguís, siguen** |
| Present subjunctive | **siga, sigas, siga, sigamos, sigáis, sigan** |
| Preterite | **seguí, seguiste, siguió, seguimos, seguisteis, siguieron** |
| Present participle | **siguiendo** |

### *SENTIR*

| | |
|---|---|
| Present indicative | **siento, sientes, siente, sentimos, sentís, sienten** |
| Present subjunctive | **sienta, sientas, sienta, sintamos, sintáis, sientan** |
| Preterite | **sentí, sentiste, sintió, sentimos, sentisteis, sintieron** |
| Present participle | **sintiendo** |

## ENGLISH-SPANISH VERB LIST

abandon—**abandonar**
accept—**aceptar**
accompany—**acompañar**
accuse—**acusar**
adjust—**ajustar**
admit—**admitir**
advise—**avisar, aconsejar**
affirm—**alegar, afirmar**
agree to—**convenir en**
aim—**apuntar**
allege—**alegar**
allow—**dejar, permitir**
answer—**contestar, responder**
appeal—**apelar**
appear—**aparecer (se), parecer;** (at a location or before a court)—**presentarse**
apply—**aplicar, solicitar**
appreciate—**apreciar**
apprehend—**aprehender**
approach—**acercarse a**
approve—**aprobar (ue)**
arrange—**arreglar**
arrest—**arrestar**

arrive—**llegar a**
ask (information)—**preguntar**
ask for—**pedir (i)**
ask questions—**hacer preguntas**
assault—**asaltar, atacar**
attack—**atacar, asaltar**
attend—**asistir**
authorize—**autorizar**

baptize—**bautizar**
bathe—**bañar (se)**
be—**ser, estar**
be able—**poder (ue)**
bear—**aguantar (se)**
beat up—**golpear**
be born—**nacer**
become—**hacerse, ponerse, volverse**
beg—**rogar (ue)**
begin—**comenzar a (ie), empezar a (ie)**
be guilty—**ser culpable**
be in charge—**estar encargado de**
believe—**creer**
be located—**estar ubicado**
belong—**pertenecer**
be situated—**estar situado**
be surprised—**sorprenderse**
bet—**apostar (ue)**
be worth—**valer**
bid farewell—**despedirse (i)**
bite—**morder (ue)**
blame—**culpar**
bless—**bendecir**
blink—**parpadear**
board—**abordar**
bore—**cansar, aburrir**
borrow—**pedir (i) prestado**
bother—**molestar**
break and enter—**entrar por escalo**
breakfast—**almorzar (ue), desayunarse**
bring—**traer**
build—**construir**
bundle—**envolver (se)(ue)**
burn—**quemar**
bury—**enterrar (ie), sepultar**
buy—**comprar**

call—**llamar (se)**
care—**cuidar, importar**
carry—**llevar, cargar**
castigate—**castigar**
catch—**agarrar, coger**
catch up—**alcanzar**
certify—**affirmar, certificar**
change—**cambiar (se), mudarse**
charge—**cobrar**
chat—**charlar, platicar**
check—**revisar**
choose—**escoger**
chop (cotton)—**desahijar; limpiar**
clean—**limpiar (se)**
climb—**subir (se) a**
close—**cerrar (ie)**
collide—**chocar**
comb—**peinar (se)**
come—**venir**
commit—**cometer**
complain—**quejarse**
complete—**completar, cumplir**
comply—**cumplir con**
conduct—**conducir**
confess—**confesar (ie)**
confide—**confiar**
congeal—**helar (ie)**
conquer—**conquistar, vencer**
construct—**construir**
contact—**comunicarse con**
contain—**caber, contener (ie)**
continue—**continuar, seguir (i)**
contract—**contratar**
convict—**condenar**
convince—**convencer**
cook—**cocinar, cocer (ue)**
cost—**costar (ue)**
count—**contar (ue)**
cover—**cubrir**
crawl—**arrastrarse, gatear**
creep—**arrastrarse**
cross—**cruzar, pasa**
cry—**llorar**
curse—**maldecir**
cut—**cortar**

dance—**bailar**
dawn—**amanecer**
deceive—**engañar**
decide—**decidir**
defend—**defender (ie), proteger**
demonstrate—**demostrar (ue)**
deny—**negar (ie)**
depend—**depender**
deport—**deportar**
desire—**desear, querer**

detain—**detener (se)**
die—**morir (se)(ue)**
direct—**dirigir (se)**
discharge—**despedir (i)**
discover—**descubrir**
disembark—**desembarcar (se)**
dismiss—**despedir (i)**
dispatch—**expedir (i)**
dispense—**dispensar**
divorce—**divorciar (se)**
do—**hacer**
do again—**volver (ue) a hacer**
drag—**arrastrar (se)**
dream—**soñar (ue)**
dress—**vestir (se)(i)**
drink—**tomar, beber**
drive—**manejar**
drop—**dejar caer**
drown—**ahogar (se)**

earn—**ganar**
eat—**comer**
eat breakfast—**desayunarse, almorzar (ue)**
eat supper—**cenar**
eject—**echar, expulsar**
employ—**emplear, contratar**
endure—**aguantar (se)**
enjoy—**gozar**
enlist—**enlistar (se), alistar (se) enganchar (se)**
enter—**entrar en, (a)**
erase—**borrar**
err—**errar**
escape—**escaparse**
escort—**llevar**
examine—**examinar, revisar**
excuse—**dispensar**
expect—**esperar**
expel—**echar, expulsar**
explain—**explicar**
extinguish—**apagar**

fail—**salir mal, fracasar**
fall asleep—**dormirse (ue)**
fall—**caer (se)**
fall due—**vencer**
fear—**temer**
feel—**sentir (se)(ie)**
fight—**pelear**
file—**archivar**
file a complaint—**poner una queja**
fill—**llenar**
find—**hallar, encontrar (use)**
find out—**saber, averiguar**
fine—**multar**
finish—**terminar, acabar**
fire—**disparar**
fish—**pescar**
fit—**caber**
fix—**arreglar, componer, reparar**
flee—**huir, fugar**
fly—**volar (ue)**
follow—**seguir (i)**
fool—**engañar**
force—**forzar (ue)**
forget—**olvidar (se)**
free—**libertar**
freeze—**helar (ie)**
frighten—**asustar**

gather—**recoger, juntar**
get—**obtener, conseguir (i)**
get angry—**enojarse, enfadarse**
get drunk—**emborracharse**
get in—**meter (se)**
get in (a vehicle)—**subir (se) a**
get lost—**perderse (ie)**
get married—**casarse con**
get ready—**alistarse**
get off—**bajar (se) de**
get out—**salirse de**
get out (of a vehicle)—**apearse, bajarse**
get out of the way—**quitar (se)**
get tired—**cansarse**
get together—**juntarse**
get up—**levantarse**
get wet—**mojarse**
give—**dar**
give up—**rendirse (i), darse por vencido, ceder**

glue—**pegar**
go—**ir a**
go ashore—**desembarcar (se)**
go away—**irse**
go thru—**atravesar (ie)**
grab—**agarrar, coger**
grant—**ceder, conceder**
grow—**crecer**
grow dark—**anochecer, o(b)scurecer**
guard—**guardar**
guide—**guiar**

hand over—**entregar (ie)**
hang—**colgar (ue)**
harvest—**cosechar**
hasten—**apurarse**
haul—**cargar**
have—**haber (auxiliary)**
have—**tener (possession)**
have just—**acabar de**
hear—**oír**
heed—**hacer caso**
help—**ayudar**
hide—**esconder (se)**
hire—**ocupar, emplear, contratar**
hit—**pegar, golpear**
hold—**detener (se), guardar**
hook—**enganchar**
hope—**esperar**
hunt—**cazar**
hurry up—**apurarse, apresurarse**
hurt—**doler (ue), lastimar (se)**

identify—**identificar**
impede—**impedir (i)**
import—**importar**
incarcerate—**encarcelar**
indict—**enjuiciar**
inform—**informar, avisar**
initial—**firmar con iniciales**
inquire—**averiguar**
iron—**planchar**
irrigate—**regar (ie)**
inspect—**inspeccionar**
investigate—**investigar**
invite—**invitar**
issue—**expedir**
join—**reunir, unir, enlistarse, juntarse**
jump—**brincar, saltar**

keep—**guardar**
kill—**matar**
knock—**sonar (ue), tocar**
know—**conocer** (familiarize, to become acquainted); **saber** (knowledge)

land (airplane)—**aterrizar**
lack—**faltar**
last—**durar**
laugh—**reír (se)**
lead—**conducir**
leap—**saltar, brincar**
learn—**aprender**
leave—**salir de**
leave (behind)—**dejar**
lend—**prestar**
let—**dejar, permitir**
liberate—**libertar**
lie—**mentir (ie)**
lie down—**acostarse (ue)**
lift—**levantar, alzar**
like—**gustar**
limp—**cojear**
listen—**escuchar**
live—**vivir**
locate—**localizar**
look at—**mirar**
look for—**buscar**
look like—**parecerse**
loosen—**aflojar**
lose—**perder (ie)**

mail—**echar al correo, enviar**
make—**hacer**
mark—**marcar**
matter—**importar**
mean—**querer decir**
measure—**medir (i)**
meet—**encontrar (ue)**
milk—(cow) **ordeñar**
miss—**errar, faltar**
mistreat—**maltratar**
molest—**molestar**
move—**mover (se) (ue), cambiar (se), quitar (se), mudarse**
name—**nombrar**
need—**necesitar**

obey—**obedecer**
obtain—**obtener, conseguir (i)**
occupy—**ocupar**
occur—**ocurrir**
offer—**ofrecer**
open—**abrir**
oppose—**oponer (se)**
order—**mandar, ordenar**
ought—**deber**
overtake—**alcanzar**
owe—**deber**

park—**estacionar (se)**
pass—**pasar, cruzar**
pay—**pagar**
permit—**permitir, dejar**

pick (harvest)—**pizcar**
pick out—**escoger**
pick up—**levantar, recoger**
place—**poner, colocar**
plant—**plantar**
play—**jugar (ue), tocar** (instrument)
plead guilty—**darse culpable**
please—**gustar**
plow—**arar**
point—**apuntar**
pray—**orar, rogar (ue)**
prepare—**preparar (se)**
present—**presentar**
press—**planchar, apretar (ie)**
prevent—**prevenir, impedir (i)**
promise—**prometer**
prosecute—**enjuiciar**
protect—**proteger**
prove—**probar (ue)**
provide—**proveer**
prune—**podar**
pull—**estirar, tirar**
punish—**castigar**
push—**empujar**
put—**poner**
put in—**meter**
put on—**ponerse**

quiet down—**callar (se)**

rain—**llover (ue)**
raise—**alzar, criar**
rap—**sonar (ue)**
reach—**alcanzar**
read—**leer**
reap—**cosechar**
rear—**criar**
receive—**recibir**
recognize—**reconocer**
refuse—**negar (ie)**
register—**registrar (se), matricular (se)**
rejoice—**gozar**
release—**soltar (ue)**
remain—**quedarse**
remember—**acordarse de (ue), recordar (ue)**
remove—**quitar (se)**
renew—**renovar**
rent—**rentar, aliquilar**
repair—**componer, reparar**
repeat—**repetir (i)**
report—**reportar**
require—**requerir**
reside—**residir, radicar**
respect—**respetar**
rest—**descansar**
retain—**retener**
return—**regresar, volver (ue), devolver (ue)** (articles)
reveal—**revelar**
ring—**sonar (ue)**
rob—**robar**
run—**correr**

satisfy—**satisfacer**
save—**ahorrar** (money), **salvar**
say—**decir**
search—**esculcar, registrar**
secure—**conseguir (i), obtener**
see—**ver**
seek—**buscar**
seem—**parecer (se)**
select—**escoger**
sell—**vender**
send—**mandar, enviar**
sentence—**sentenciar, condenar**
separate—**separar**
serve—**servir (i)**
sew—**coser**
shave—**afeitar (se)**
shear—**trasquilar**
shoot—**tirar, disparar**
show—**enseñar, demostrar (ue), mostrar (ue)**
show gratitude—**agradecer**
shut up—**callar (se)**
sign—**firmar**
signify—**significar**
sit down—**sentarse (ie)**
sleep—**dormir (ue)**
smell—**oler (ue)**
smile—**sonreír (se)**
smoke—**fumar**
solicit—**solicitar**
sow—**sembrar (ie)**
speak—**hablar**
spell—**deletrear**
spend—**gastar** (money), **pasar** (time)
squat—**agacharse**
stand up—**pararse**

start—**empezar a (ie), comenzar a (ie)**
stay—**quedarse**
steal—**robar**
stoop—**agacharse**
stop—**parar (se)**
study—**estudiar**
stuff—**llenar**
stumble—**tropezar (ie)**
support—**mantener, sostener**
surprise—**sorprender**
surrender—**rendirse**
swear—(oath) **jurar, hacer juramento**
swim—**nadar**

take—**llevar, tomar**
take advantage of—**aprovechar (se)**
take a ride—**pasear (se)**
take a walk—**pasear (se)**
take away—**quitar (se)**
take care of—**cuidar**
take charge of—**encargarse de**
take notice—**fijarse en**
take off—**quitar (se)**
take out—**sacar**
talk—**hablar, platicar, charlar**
taste—**probar (ue)**
teach—**enseñar**
tear—**romper**
telephone—**telefonear**
tell—**decir, contar (ue)**
terminate—**terminar, acabar**
test—**examinar, probar (ue)**
testify—**testificar, atestar**
there to be—**haber**
thin (cotton)—**desahijar**
think—**pensar (ie), creer**
threaten—**amenazar, hacer amenazas**
throw—**aventar, tirar**
tie—**amarrar, atar**
tighten—**apretar (ie)**
tire—**cansar (se)**
top (beets)—**descoronar**
toss—**echar**
touch—**tocar**
transport—**transportar, trasladar**
travel—**viajar, caminar**
treat—**tratar**
trust—**confiar**
try—**tratar**
try—**tratar de**
turn loose—**soltar (ue)**
turn off—**apagar**

understand—**entender (ie), comprender**
unite—**unir, reunir**
use—**usar**

violate—**violar**
vote—**votar**
visit—**visitar**

wade—**vadear, andar a pie por el agua**
wait for—**esperar**
wake up—**despertar (ie)**
walk—**andar, caminar**
want—**querer**
warn—**avisar, advertir**
wash—**lavar (se)**
water—**regar (ie)**
weigh—**pesar**
whistle—**chiflar, silbar**
win—**ganar**
wish—**desear, querer**
withhold—**retener**
work—**trabajar**
wrap—**envolver (se)(ue)**
write—**escribir**

## SPANISH-ENGLISH VERB LIST

**abandonar**—to abandon
**abordar**—to board
**abrir**—to open
**aburrir**—to bore
**acabar**—to finish, terminate
**acabar de**—to have just
**aceptar**—to accept
**acercarse a**—to approach
**acompañar**—to accompany
**aconsejar**—to advise
**acordarse de (ue)**—to remember
**acostarse (ue)**—to lie down
**acusar**—to accuse
**admitir**—to admit
**advertir (ie)**—to warn
**afeitar (se)**—to shave

affirmar—to certify, affirm
aflojar—to loosen
agacharse—to stoop, squat
agarrar—to catch, grab
agradecer—to show gratitude
aguantar (se)—to bear, endure
ahogar (se)—to drown
ahorrar—to save (money)
ajustar—to adjust
alcanzar—to reach, overtake, catch up
alegar—to allege, affirm
alistar (se)—to get ready, enlist
almorzar (ue)—to breakfast
alquilar—to rent
alzar—to raise, lift
amanecer—to dawn
amarrar—to tie
amenazar—to threaten
andar—to walk
anochecer—to grow dark
apagar—to turn off, extinguish
aparecer (se)—to appear
apearse—to get out (of a vehicle)
apelar—to appeal
aplicar—to apply
apostar (ue)—to bet
apreciar—to appreciate
aprehender—to apprehend
aprender—to learn
apresurarse—to hurry up
apretar (ie)—to tighten, press
aprobar (ue)—to approve
aprovechar (se)—to take advantage of
apuntar—to aim, point
apurarse—to hurry up, hasten
archivar—to file
arrastrar—to drag
arrastrarse—to crawl, creep
arreglar—to fix, arrange
arrestar—to arrest
asaltar—to assault, attack
asistir—to attend
asustar—to frighten
atacar—to attack, assault
atar—to tie
atestar—to testify
atravesar (ie)—to go thru
autorizar—to authorize
aventar—to throw
averiguar—to find out, inquire
avisar—to advise, inform, warn
ayudar—to help

bailar—to dance
bajar (se) de—to get off or out
bañar (se)—to bathe
bautizar—to baptize
beber—to drink
bendecir—to bless
borrar—to erase
brincar—to jump, leap
buscar—to look for, seek

caber—to fit, contain
caer (se)—to fall
callar (se)—to quiet down, shut up
cambiar (se)—to change, move
caminar—to walk, travel
cansar—to bore, tire
cansarse—to get tired
cargar—to carry, haul
casarse con—to get married
castigar—to punish, castigate
cazar—to hunt
ceder—to give up, grant
cenar—to eat supper
cerrar (ie)—to close
certificar—to certify
charlar—to chat, talk
chiflar—to whistle
chocar—to collide
cobrar—to charge
cocer (ue)—to cook
cocinar—to cook
coger—to catch, grab
cojear—to limp
colgar (ue)—to hang
colocar—to place
comenzar a (ie)—to begin
comer—to eat
cometer—to commit
completar—to complete
componer—to repair, fix
comprar—to buy
comprender—to understand
comunicarse con—to contact
conceder—to grant
condenar—to sentence, convict
conducir—to lead, conduct
confesar (ie)—to confess
confiar—to confide in, trust
conocer—to know (familiarize)

**conquistar**—to conquer
**conseguir (i)**—to obtain, secure, get
**construir**—to build, construct
**contar (ue)**—to count, tell
**contener**—to contain
**contestar**—to answer
**continuar**—to continue
**contratar**—to contract, hire, employ
**convencer**—to convince
**convenir en**—to agree to
**correr**—to run
**cortar**—to cut
**cosechar**—to harvest, reap
**coser**—to sew
**costar (ue)**—to cost
**crecer**—to grow
**creer**—to believe, think
**criar**—to raise, rear
**cruzar**—to cross, pass
**cubrir**—to cover
**cuidar**—to take care of, care for
**culpar**—to blame
**cumplir**—to complete
**cumplir con**—to comply

**dar**—to give
**darse culpable**—to plead guilty
**darse por vencido**—to give up
**deber**—to owe, ought
**decidir**—to decide
**decir**—to tell, say
**defender (ie)**—to defend
**dejar**—to let, allow, permit, leave (behind)
**dejar caer**—to drop
**deletrear**—to spell
**demostrar (ue)**—to demonstrate, show
**depender**—to depend
**deportar**—to deport
**desahijar**—to thin (cotton)
**desayunarse**—to breakfast
**descansar**—to rest
**descoronar**—to top (beets)
**descubrir**—to discover
**desear**—to wish, desire
**desembarcar (se)**—to disembark, go ashore
**despedir (i)**—to dismiss, discharge
**despedirse (i)**—to bid farewell
**despertar (ie)**—to wake up
**detener (se)**—to detain, hold
**devolver (ue)**—to return (articles)
**dirigir (se)**—to direct
**disparar**—to shoot, fire
**dispensar**—to excuse, dispense
**divorciar (se)**—to divorce
**doler (ue)**—to hurt
**dormir (ue)**—to sleep
**dormirse**—to fall asleep
**durar**—to last

**echar**—to eject, expel, toss
**echar al correo**—to mail
**emborracharse**—to get drunk
**empezar a (ie)**—to begin, start
**emplear**—to hire, employ
**empujar**—to push
**encarcelar**—to incarcerate
**encargarse de**—to take charge of
**encontrar (ue)**—to meet, find
**enfadarse**—to get angry
**enganchar**—to hook
**enganchar (se)**—to enlist
**engañar**—to deceive, fool
**enjuiciar**—to indict, prosecute
**enlistar (se)**—to join, enlist
**enojarse**—to get angry
**enseñar**—to teach, show
**entender (ie)**—to understand
**enterrar (ie)**—to bury
**entrar en, (a)**—to enter
**entrar por escalo**—to break and enter
**entregar (ie)**—to hand over
**enviar**—to mail, send
**envolver (se) (ue)**—to wrap, bundle
**errar**—to err, miss
**escaparse**—to escape
**ecsoger**—to choose, select, pick out
**esconder (se)**—to hide
**escribir**—to write
**escuchar**—to listen
**esculcar**—to search
**esperar**—to wait for, expect
**estacionar (se)**—to park
**estar**—to be
**estar encargado de**—to be in charge
**estar situado**—to be situated
**estar ubicado**—to be located
**estirar**—to pull
**estudiar**—to study
**examinar**—to examine, test
**expedir (i)**—to issue, dispatch

explicar—to explain
expulsar—to expel, eject

faltar—to lack, miss
fijarse en—to take notice
firmar—to sign
firmar con iniciales—to initial
forzar (ue)—to force
fracasar—to fail
fugar—to flee
fumar—to smoke

ganar—to earn, win
gastar—to spend (money)
gatear—to crawl
golpear—to beat up, hit
gozar—to enjoy, rejoice
guardar—to guard, keep, hold
guiar—to guide
gustar—to like, please

haber—to have (auixiliary), to be
hablar—to talk, speak
hacer—to do, make
hacer amenazas—to threaten
hacer caso—to heed, pay attention
hacer preguntas—to ask questions
hacerse—to become
hallar—to find
helar (ie)—to freeze, congeal
huir—to flee

identificar—to identify
informar—to inform
impedir (i)—to prevent, impede
importar—to import, care, matter
inspeccionar—to inspect
investigar—to investigate
invitar—to invite
ir a—to go
irse—to go away

jugar (ue)—to play
juntar—to gather
juntarse—to get together, to join
jurar—to swear (oath)

lastimar (se)—to hurt
lavar (se)—to wash
leer—to read
levantar—to pick up, lift
levantarse—to get up

libertar—to free, liberate
limpiar (se)—to clean
localizar—to locate
llamar (se)—to call, to be named
llegar a—to arrive
llenar—to fill, stuff
llevar—to take, carry, escort, wear
llorar—to cry
llover (ue)—to rain

maldecir—to curse
maltratar—to mistreat
mandar—to send, order
manejar—to drive
mantener—to support
marcar—to mark
matar—to kill
matricular (se)—to register
medir (i)—to measure
mentir (ie)—to lie
meter—to put in
meter (se)—to get in
mirar—to look at
mojarse—to get wet
molestar—to molest, bother
morder (ue)—to bite
morir (se)(ue)—to die
mostrar (ue)—to show
mover (se)—to move
mudarse—to change, move
multar—to fine

nacer—to be born
nadar—to swim
necesitar—to need
negar (ie)—to deny, refuse
nombrar—to name

obedecer—to obey
obtener—to obtain, get, secure
o(b)scurecer—to grow dark
ocupar—to occupy, hire
ocurrir—to occur
ofrecer—to offer
oír—to hear
oler (ue)—to smell
olvidar (se)—to forget
oponer (se)—to oppose
orar—to pray
ordenar—to order

pagar—to pay

parar (se)—to stop
pararse—to stand up, stop
parecer (se)—to seem, appear
parpadear—to blink
pasar—to pass, cross, spend (time)
pasear (se)—to take a walk, ride
pedir (i)—to ask for
pedir (i) prestado—to borrow
pegar—to hit, glue
peinar (se)—to comb
pelear—to fight
pensar (ie)—to think
perder—to lose
perderse—to get lost
permitir—to permit, let, allow
pertenecer—to belong
pesar—to weigh
pescar—to fish, catch
pizcar—to pick (harvest)
planchar—to iron, press
plantar—to plant
platicar—to talk, chat
podar—to prune
poder (ue)—to be able
poner—to put, place
ponerse—to put on, become
poner una queja—to file a complaint
preguntar—to ask (information)
preparar (se)—to prepare
presentar—to present—introduce
presentarse—to appear (at a location or before a court)
prestar—to lend
prevenir—to prevent
probar (ue)—to prove, taste, test
prometer—to promise
proteger—to protect, defend
proveer—to provide

quebrar—to break
quedarse—to stay, remain
quejarse (de)—to complain about of
quemar—to burn
querer—to want, wish, desire
querer decir—to mean
quitar (se)—to remove, take off, take away, get out of the way

radicar—to reside
recibir—to receive
reconocer—to recognize
recoger—to gather, pick up
recordar (ue)—remember
regar (ie)—to irrigate, water
registrar (se)—to register, search
regresar—to return
reír (se)—to laugh
rendir (se)(i)—to surrender, give up
renovar—to renew
rentar—to rent
reparar—to repair, fix
repetir (i)—to repeat
requerir—to require
residir—to reside
responder—to answer, respond
reportar—to report
respetar—to respect
retener—to retain, withhold
reunir—to unite, join
revelar—to reveal
revisar—to examine, check
robar—to rob, steal
rogar (ue)—to beg, pray
romper—to tear
saber—to know (knowledge), find out
sacar—to take out
salir de—to leave
salirse de—to get out
salir mal—to fail
saltar—to leap, jump
salvar—to save
satisfacer—to satisfy
seguir (i)—to follow, continue
sembrar (ie)—to sow
sentarse (ie)—to sit down
sentenciar—to sentence
sentir (se)(ie)—to feel
separar—to separate
sepultar—to bury
ser—to be
ser culpable—to be guilty
servir (i)—to serve
significar—to signify
silbar—to whistle
solicitar—to apply, solicit
soltar (ue)—to turn loose, release
sonar (ue)—to knock, rap, ring
sonreír (se)—to smile
soñar (ue)—to dream

**sorprender**—to surprise
**sorprenderse**—to be surprised
**sostener**—to support
**subir (se) a**—to climb, get in (on)
**telefonear**—to telephone
**temer**—to fear
**tener**—to have (possession)
**terminar**—to terminate, finish
**testificar**—to testify
**tirar**—to throw, shoot, pull
**tocar**—to play (instrument), knock, touch
**tomar**—to take, drink
**trabajar**—to work
**traer**—to bring
**transportar**—to transport
**trasladar**—to transport
**trasquilar**—to shear
**tratar**—to try, treat
**tratar de**—to try, attempt
**tropezar (ie)**—to stumble, meet by accident
**unir**—to unite, join
**usar**—to use
**vadear**—to wade
**valer**—to be worth
**vencer**—to conquer, fall due
**vender**—to sell
**venir**—to come
**ver**—to see
**vestir (se) (i)**—to dress
**viajar**—to travel
**violar**—to violate
**visitar**—to visit
**vivir**—to live
**volar (ue)**—to fly
**volver (ue)**—to return
**volver a (ue) hacer**—to do again
**volverse**—to become
**votar**—to vote

## ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY

a—**un, una**
abode—**domicilio, m; residencia, f**
about—**acerca de, tocante a, de, como**
above—**arriba**
absence—**ausencia, f**
absent—**ausente**
accent—**acento, m**
accord—**acuerdo, m**
according to—**según**
ache—**dolor, m**
acquaintance—**conocido, -a**
acre—**acre, m**
addict—**adicto, -a**
address—**dirección, f**
admission—**admisión, f**
advice—**aviso, m; consejo, m**
a few—**unos, unos cuantos, unos pocos**
affair—**asunto, m; negocio, m**
affidavit—**declaración, f**
afoot—**a pie**
after—**después (de), después (de) que, detrás (de)**
afternoon—**tarde, f**
afterwards—**después**
again—**otra vez, de nuevo**
against—**en contra de, contra**
age—**edad, f**
agent—**agente, m**
ago—**hace**
a great deal of—**mucho, -a**
agreement—**acuerdo, m; pacto, m**
ahead—**adelante, delante**
air—**aire, m**
airplane—**avión, m**
airport—**aeropuerto, m**
alien—**extranjero, -a**
all—**todo**
alley—**callejón, m**
all right—**está bien, bueno**
almost—**ya mero, casi**
alone—**solo, -a**
along—**a lo largo de**
a lot of—**mucho, -a**
already—**ya**
also—**también**
although—**aunque**
always—**siempre**
America—**América, f**
American—**americano, -a**
ammunition—**munición(es), f; parque, m**
among—**entre**
an—**un, una**
and—**y**

angry—**enojado, -a**
animal—**animal, m**
announcement—**anuncio, m**
another—**otro, -a**
answer—**contestación, f; respuesta, f**
any—**algún(o), -a; cualquier(a)**
anybody—**alguien, cualquiera, nadie**
anyhow—**de cualquier modo, de todos modos**
anyone—**nadie, alguien, cualquier(a)**
any place—**cualquier lugar, algún lugar, ningún lugar**
anything—**algo, nada**
anyway—**de cualquier modo, de todos modos**
anywhere—**cualquier lugar, algún lugar, ningún lugar**
apartment—**apartamiento, m**
apple—**manzana, f**
application—**aplicación, f; solicitud, f**
appointment—**cita, f; compromiso, m**
April—**abril**
archive—**archivo, m**
are there?—**¿hay?**
argument—**disgusto, m**
arm—**brazo, m**
army—**ejército, m**
around—**alrededor**
arrangement—**arreglo, m**
arrival—**llegada, f**
artist—**artista, m-f**
as—**como, de, tan**
as far as—**en cuanto, hasta**
as many—**tantos, -as**
as much—**tanto, -a**
assistant—**ayudante, m**
as soon as—**luego que, tan pronto como**
as soon as possible—**lo más pronto posible**
at—**en, a**
at dawn—**al amanecer, a la madrugada**
at dusk—**al anochecer**
at first—**al principio**
at home—**en casa**
at last—**al fin**
at least—**a lo menos, por lo menos, al menos**
at once—**en seguida, al instante**
at present—**actualmente**
at sun down—**a la caída del sol, a la caída de la tarde**
at the beginning—**al principio**
at the end of—**al fin de**
at times—**a veces**
August—**agosto**
aunt—**tía, f**
authority—**autoridad, f**
automobile—**automóvil, m; carro, m; coche, m**
autumn—**otoño, m**
avenue—**avenida, f**
axe—**hacha, f (el)**
Aztec—**azteca**

## B

baby—**niño (a); bebi; nene, m; nena, f; infante, m**
bachelor—**soltero, m**
back—**detrás (de), atrás (de), espalda, f**
back door—**puerta de atrás, f; puerta trasera, f**
back seat—**asiento de atrás, m; asiento trasero, m**
bacon—**tocino, m**
bad—**mal(o), -a**
badge—**placa, f**
badly—**mal**
bag—**bolsa, f**
baggage—**equipaje, m**
baggage check—**contraseña, f**
bail—**fianza, f**
baker—**panadero, m**
bakery—**panadería, f**
bald—**pelón, -a (slang); calvo, -a**
banana—**banana, f; plátano, m**
bandit—**bandido, m**
bank—**banco, m; orilla, f**
banker—**banquero, m**
banner—**bandera, f**
banquet—**banquete, m**
baptismal certificate—**fe de bautismo, f**
baptismal name—**nombre de pila, m**
bar—**cantina, f**
barbecue—**barbacoa, f**
barber—**peluquero, m; barbero, m**

barber shop—**peluquería, f; barbería, f**
barely—**apenas**
barge—**barco, m; lancha, f**
barmaid—**cantinera, f**
barrack—**barraca, f**
barrel—**barril, m**
bartender—**cantinero, m**
base—**base, f**
bastard—**bastardo**
bath—**baño, m**
bathroom—**cuarto de baño, m**
battery—**batería f; pila, f; acumulador, m**
beach—**playa, f**
bean—**frijol, m**
bear—**oso, -a**
beard—**barba, f**
beautiful—**bello, -a; hermoso, -a**
because—**porque**
because of—**a causa de; por**
bed—**cama, f**
bedroll—**mochila, f**
bedroom—**recámara, f**
beef—**res, f**
beefsteak—**bistec, m**
beer—**cerveza, f**
beet—**betabel, m**
before (front of)—**delante de**
before (time)—**antes de**
beggar—**mendigo, m**
behind—**detrás (de), atrás (de)**
bell—**campana, f**
belly—**panza, f**
below—**debajo (de), abajo (de)**
belt—**cinto, m; cinturón, m; faja, f**
belt maker—**talabartero, m**
bench—**banco, m; banca, f**
beneath—**debajo (de)**
beside—**al lado (de); cerca (de)**
besides—**además (de)**
best—**mejor**
better—**mejor**
between—**entre**
B-girl—**fichera, f (slang)**
big—**grande**
bigamist—**bígamo, m**
bigamy—**bigamia**
big belly—**panzón, -a**
bill—**billete, m; cuenta, f**
billiard room—**billar, m**
billfold—**billetera, f; cartera, f**
binoculars—**gemelos, m; lentes de larga distancia, m**
biology—**biología, f**
bird—**pájaro, m; ave, f (el)**
birth—**nacimiento, m**
birth certificate—**certificado de nacimiento, m; acta de nacimiento, f (el)**
birthday—**cumpleaños, m**
birthmark—**estigma, f; marca de nacimiento, f**
biscuit—**bollo, m; bizcocho, m**
black—**negro, -a**
blackboard—**pizarra, f; pizarón, m**
blacksmith—**herrero, m; forjador, m**
blame—**culpa, f; falta, f**
blanket—**cobija, f; frazada, f**
blind—**ciego, -a**
block (city)—**cuadra, f; manzana, f**
blond—**rubio, -a; huero, -a**
blood—**sangre, f**
blouse—**blusa, f**
blue—**azul**
boat—**bote, m; barco, m; lancha, f**
body—**cuerpo, m**
bond—**fianza, f**
bone—**hueso, m**
bookkeeper—**tenedor de libros, m**
boot—**bota, f**
border—**frontera, f; orilla, f**
Border Patrol—**Patrulla de la Frontera, f; migra, f (slang)**
boss—**patrón, m; jefe, m**
both—**ambos, los (las) dos**
bottle—**botella, f**
bottom—**fondo, m**
bow-legged—**patizambo, -a**
box—**caja, f; cajón, m**
boxcar—**furgón, m**
boy—**muchacho, m; chamaco, m (slang) chavalo, m (slang), niño**
bracelet—**pulsera, f; braceleta, f**
brake—**freno, m**
branch—**ramo, m; rama, f**
brave—**valiente, bravo, -a**
brawl—**barulla, f; disputa, f**
bread—**pan, m**
breakfast—**desayuno, m; almuerzo, m**
breast—**pecho, m**

brewery—**cervecería, f**
brick—**ladrillo, m**
brickmason (layer)—**albañil, m**
bridge—**puente, m**
bridle—**freno, m**
broad—**ancho, -a**
broken—**roto, -a; quebrado, -a**
brood—**cría, f**
broom—**escoba, f**
broomcorn—**millo de escoba, m**
brother—**hermano, m**
brother-in-law—**cuñado, m**
brown—**café**
brunette—**moreno, -a; trigueño, -a**
brush—**chaparral, m; monte, m; matorral, m**
bucket—**cubeta, f; balde, m; bote, m**
building—**edificio, m**
bull—**toro, m**
bullet—**bala, f; balazo, m**
bulletin—**boletín, m**
bundle—**bulto, m; chiva, f** (slang)
burn—**quemada, f**
burn scar—**quemada, f**
bus—**autobús, m; camión, m; ómnibus, m**
bus boy—**mozo, m**
business—**negocio, m**
busy—**ocupado, -a**
but—**pero, sino, mas**
butcher—**carnicero, m**
butter—**mantequilla, f**
button—**botón, m**
by—**por, para**
by (near)—**cerca**
by day—**de día**
by means of—**por medio de**
by night—**de noche**

## C

cabbage—**repollo, m**
cafe—**café, m**
cake—**bollo, m; pastel, m**
calendar—**calendario, m; cromo, m**
calf—**becerro, -a**
camp—**campo, m**
can—**bote, m; lata, f**
candy—**dulce, m**
canoe—**canoa, f; chalupa, f**
cap—**cachucha, f; gorra, f**
capital—**capital, f**
car—**carro, m; auto, m; coche, m**
card—**tarjeta, f**
care—**cuidado**
careful—**cuidado; cuidadoso, -a**
carefully—**cuidadosamente**
carpenter—**carpintero, m**
carpenter shop—**carpintería, f**
carrot—**zanahoria, f**
cash—**al contado**
cashier—**cajero, m; contador, m**
cat—**gato, -a**
cattle—**ganado, m**
cattleguard—**guardavacas, m**
cattleman—**ganadero, m**
cause—**causa, f**
cave—**cueva, f**
ceiling—**cielo, m**
cemetery—**cementerio, m; panteón, m**
cent—**centavo, m**
century—**siglo, m**
certain—**seguro, -a; cierto, -a**
certainly—**ciertamente; ¿cómo no?**
certificate—**certificado, m**
chair—**silla, f**
chalk—**tiza, f**
chance—**oportunidad, f**
change—**cambio, m**
charming—**simpático, -a**
chauffer—**chofer, m**
cheap—**barato, -a**
check (commercial)—**cheque, m**
cheek—**mejilla, f**
cheese—**queso, m**
cherry—**cereza, f**
chest—**pecho, m; baúl, m**
chicken—**pollo, m; gallina, f**
chief—**jefe, m; patrón, m**
child—**niño, -a**
child's nurse—**nana, f**
chin—**barba, f**
Christian name—**nombre de pila; m; primer nombre, m**
Christmas—**Navidad, f**
Christmas Eve—**Nochebuena, f**
church—**iglesia, f**
cigar—**puro, m; cigarro, m**
cigarette—**cigarrillo, m; cigarro, m**
citizen—**ciudadano, -a**
citizenship—**ciudadanía, f**

city—**ciudad, f**
civil—**civil**
class—**clase, f**
clay—**barro, m**
clean—**limpio, -a**
clear—**claro, -a**
clearly—**claramente**
clerk—**dependiente, m-f**
clock—**reloj, m**
close—**cerca (de)**
clothes—**ropa, f**
clothing—**ropa, f**
cloud—**nube, f**
coach—**coche, m**
coat—**saco, m; abrigo, m**
cobbler—**zapatero, m**
cock—**gallo, m**
coffee—**café, m**
cold—**frío, -a; frío, m**
collar—**cuello, m**
collision—**choque, m**
colony—**colonia, f**
color—**color, m**
commission merchant—**comisionista, m-**
communist—**comunista, m-f**
companion—**compañero, -a**
company—**compañía, f**
compartment—**compartimiento, m**
complaint—**queja, f**
complete—**completo, -a**
complexion—**tez, f**
concerning—**acerca de, tocante a, de**
constable—**alguacil, m**
consul—**cónsul, m**
consulate—**consulado, m**
content(ed)—**contento, -a**
contents—**contenidos, m**
contract laborer—**bracero, m**
contractor—**contratista, m**
convict—**convicto, m**
cook—**cocinero, -a**
cool—**fresco, -a**
cop—**chota, f (slang)**
copper—**cobre, m**
cord—**cordón, m; cuerda, f**
corn (dry)—**maíz, m**
corn (fresh)—**elote, m**
corner—**esquina, f; rincón, m**
cornfield—**milpa, f**
corral—**corral, m**
correct—**correcto, -a**
cotton—**algodón, m**
cotton picking—**pizca, f**
cottonwood—**álamo, m**
counsel—**consejo, m; aviso, m**
country—**país, m; campo, m**
country house—**villa, f**
countryman—**campesino, m**
countryman (fellow)—**paisano, m**
county—**condado, m**
court—**corte, f**
courthouse—**casacorte, f**
cousin—**primo, -a**
cow—**vaca, f**
cowboy—**vaquero, m**
coyote—**coyote, m**
crate box—**cajón, m**
crazy—**loco, -a**
cream—**crema, f**
credit (on)—**al fiado; crédito, m**
creek—**arroyo, m; riachuelo, m**
crew (ship)—**tripulación, f**
crewman—**tripulante, m**
crime—**crimen, m; delito, m**
criminal—**criminal, m; reo, m**
cripple—**rengo, -a; cojo, -a**
cross—**cruz, f**
crude—**crudo, -a**
crutch—**muleta, f**
cry—**grito, m**
crybaby—**llorón, -a**
cucumber—**pepino, m**
cup—**taza, f**
curve—**curva, f**
custom—**costumbre, f; moda, f**
customs—**aduana, f**
customs officer—**aduanero, m**
cut—**cortada, f**
cute—**bonito, -a; lindo, -a**
cut scar—**cortada, f**

## D

dad—**papá, m**
daily—**diario, -a**
daily newspaper—**diario, m**
dairy—**lechería, f**
damage—**daño, m**
dance—**baile, m**
dancer—**bailarín, -a**
danger—**peligro, m**

4

dangerous—peligroso, -a
dark—o(b)scuro, -a
date—fecha, f; cita, f
daughter—hija, f
daughter-in-law—nuera, f
day—día, m
day after tomorrow—pasado mañana
day before yesterday—anteayer
day laborer—jornalero, m
day off—día de descanso, m
dead—muerto, -a
deaf—sordo, -a
dear (affection)—querido, -a
dear (costly)—caro
death—muerte, f
debt—deuda, f
December—diciembre
deed—hecho, m; acto, m
deep—hondo, -a
deer—venado, -a
defect—defecto, m
delicious—delicioso, -a
dentist—dentista, m-f
departure—salida, f
dependent—dependiente, m-f
deportation—deportación, f
description—descripción, f
desert—desierto, m
destination—destinación, f
detail—detalle, m
detective—detectivo, m; detective, m
detention camp—corralón, m (slang)
devil—diablo, m
difference—diferencia, f
different—diferente
difficult—difícil, duro, -a (slang)
difficulty—dificultad, f
dinner—cena, f; comida, f
direction—dirección, f; rumbo, m
director—director, m
dirt—polvo, m; tierra, f
dirty—sucio, -a; mugroso, -a (slang)
dispute—disgusto, m; mitote, m
distance—distancia, f
distant—distante
district—distrito, m
ditch—zanja, f; acequia, f; canal, m
divisional—divisorio, -a
divorce—divorcio, m
doctor—doctor, -a; médico, m
document—documento, m
dog—perro, -a
doll—muñeca, f
dollar—dólar, m
domestic—doméstico, -a
domicile—domicilio, m
donkey—burro, -a
door—puerta, f
double—doble
doubt—duda, f
dough—masa, f
dove—paloma, f
down—abajo
dozen—docena, f
drag—rastra, f
drag trail—sendero rastreado, m
drawer—cajón, m
dress—vestido, m; traje, m
dressmaker—costurera, f; modista, f
driver—chofer, m
drug—droga, f
druggist—droguero, m; boticario, m
drug store—botica, f; farmacia, f; droguería, f
drunk—borracho, ebrio, tomado
drunkard—borrachón, m
drunkenness—borracher(í)a, f; borrachez, f
dry—seco, -a
duck—pato, -a
during—durante
dusk—anochecer, m
dust—polvo, m
duty—obligación, f; deber, m
duties (customs)—derechos; impuestos, m

## E

each—cada
eagle—águila, f (el)
ear (inner)—oído, m
ear (outer)—oreja, f
early—temprano
earring—arete, m
earth—tierra, f
easily—fácilmente
east—este, m; oriente, m
eastern—oriental
easy—fácil
ebony—ébano, m

echo—**eco, m**
education—**educación, f**
egg—**huevo, m; blanquillo, m**
eight—**ocho**
eighth—**octavo, -a**
either—**o**
elbow—**codo, m**
election—**elección, f**
electric—**elétrico, -a**
electricity—**electricidad, f**
elegant—**elegante**
embassy—**embajada, f**
emigrant—**emigrante, m**
employee—**empleado, -a; trabajador, -a**
employment—**empleo, m; trabajo, m; chamba, f** (slang)
empty—**vacío, -a**
enemy—**enemigo, -a**
engine—**locomotora, f; máquina, f**
engineer—**ingeniero, m; maquinista, m**
English—**inglés, -a**
English (language)—**inglés, m**
enough—**bastante, suficiente, basta**
entire—**entero, -a**
entrance—**entrada, f**
entrance gate—**garita, f** (slang)
entry—**entrada, f**
envelope—**sobre, m**
equal—**igual**
eraser—**borrador, m**
errand—**mandado, m; recado, m**
error—**error, m; falta, f**
especial—**especial**
even—**llano, -a; liso, -a**
evening—**tarde, f; noche, f**
ever—**alguna vez**
every—**cada; todos los——; todas las——**
everybody—**todos, todo el mundo**
everywhere—**por todas partes, por donde-quiera**
evidence—**evidencia, f**
ewe—**oveja, f**
exact—**exacto, -a; mero, -a** (slang)
exactly—**exactamente, mero** (slang)
examination—**examen, m**
example—**ejemplo, m**
excellent—**excelente**
except—**menos**
exclusion—**exclusión, f**
excuse—**excusa, f**
exercise—**ejercicio, m**
expenses—**gastos, m**
expensive—**caro, -a**
express—**expreso, m; exprés, m**
extension—**extensión, f**
extra—**extra**
eye—**ojo, m**
eyebrow—**ceja, f**
eyeglasses—**anteojos, m; lentes, m**
eyelash—**pestaña, f**
eyelid—**párpado, m**

## F

face—**cara, f**
fact—**hecho, m**
factory—**fábrica, f**
fair—**claro, -a**
faith—**fe, f**
fall—**otoño, m**
false—**falso, -a**
falsehood—**falsedad, f; mentira, f**
family—**familia, f**
far—**lejos**
fare—**pasaje, m**
farm—**rancho, m; hacienda, f**
farmer—**hacendado, m; ranchero, m; campesino, m**
farm laborer—**labrador, m; cultivador, m; sembrador, m**
father—**más lejos**
fashion—**moda, f; manera, f**
fast—**rápido, -a**
fat—**gordo, -a**
father—**padre, m; papá, m**
father-in-law—**suegro, m**
fault—**culpa, f**
February—**febrero**
federal—**federal**
fee—**derecho, m**
fellow countryman—**paisano, m**
female—**hembra, f**
fence—**cerca, f; cerco, m**
fence jumper—**alambrista, m-f** (slang)
few—**pocos, -as; unos, -as**
fewer—**menos**
field—**campo, m; labor, f**

fifteen—quince
fifth—quinto, -a
fifty—cincuenta
fight—pelea, f; pleito, m
file—archivo, m; lima, f
film—película, f
final—final, último, -a
finally—al fin, por fin
fine—multa, f
finger—dedo, m
fingernail—uña, f
fingerprints—huellas digitales, f; huellas de los dedos, f
fire—lumbre, f; fuego, m
fireman—bombero, m; fogonero, m
firewood—leña, f
first—primer(o), -a
fish—pez, m; pescado, m
fisherman—pescador, -a
fishing—pesca, f
five—cinco
five hundred—quinientos, -as
flag—bandera, f
flame—llama, f
flashlight—luz de mano, f (slang); foco de mano, m
flat (tire)—llanta pinchada, f
flat-nosed—chato, -a
flight—vuelo, m
flood—inundación, f; diluvio, m
floor—piso, m; suelo, m
flour—harina, f
flower—flor, f
fly—mosca, f
following—siguiente
food—alimento, m; comida, f
fool—tonto, -a
foot—pie, m
foot bridge—puente de a pie, m
footpath—senda, f; sendero, m; vereda, f
for—por, para
forearm—canilla, f
forehead—frente, f
foreign—extranjero, -a
foreman—mayordomo, -a
forest—selva, f; bosque, m
forgery—falsificación, f
fork—tenedor, m; horca, f
form—forma, f
former—anterior
formerly—anteriormente, antes
for that reason—por eso, así que
fortnight—quincena, f
forty—cuarenta
forward—adelante
four—cuatro
fourteen—catorce
fourth—cuarto, -a
fowl—ave, f (el)
fox—zorro, -a
frank—franco, -a
frankness—franqueza, f
free—libre
freedom—libertad, f
freight—carga, f
freight train—trend de carga, m
French—francés, -a
frequently—frecuentemente, a menudo
fresh—fresco, -a
friar—fraile, m
Friday—viernes, m
friend—amigo, -a
from—de, desde
from time to time—de vez en cuando
front of—delante de
front seat—asiento de enfrente, m
fruit—fruta, f
fryer (chicken)—pollo, m
frying pan—sartén, f
full—lleno, -a
furniture—muebles, m
furniture store—mueblería, f
future—futuro, m; porvenir, m

### G

gain—ganancia, f
gambler—tahur, m
garage—garage, m
garlic—ajo, m
generally—generalmente
gentleman—caballero, m
German—alemán, -a
gift—regalo, m
girdle—faja, f; cinto, m
girl—muchacha, f; niña, f
glance—mirada, f; ojeada, f
glass—vidrio, m
glass (drinking)—vaso, m
glove—guante, m

goat—**cabra, f; chivo, -a**
goathered—**pastor, m; chivero, m; borreguero, m; cabrero, m**
God—**Dios**
goddaughter—**ahijada, f**
godfather—**padrino, m**
God grant—**ojalá**
godmother—**madrina, f**
godson—**ahijado, m**
gold—**oro, m**
good—**bueno, -a**
goodbye—**adiós**
governess—**nana, f**
government—**gobierno, m**
grain combine—**segadora de combinación, f**
grandchild—**nieto, -a**
grandfather—**abuelo, m**
grandmother—**abuela, f**
grape—**uva, f**
grapefruit—**toronja, f**
grass—**sacate, m; yerba, f**
graveyard—**panteón, m; cementerio, m**
gray—**gris;** (hair) **pelo canoso, m**
great—**grande, famoso, -a**
green—**verde**
grocer—**abacero, m**
groceries—**abarrotes, m**
ground—**suelo, m; tierra, f**
group—**grupo, m**
guarantee—**garantía, f**
guard—**guardia, m-f**
guest—**huésped, -a**
guide—**guía, m-f**
guilt—**culpa, f**
guilty—**culpable**
gulf—**golfo, m**
gun—**fusil, m;** (shotgun—**escopeta, f)**
gunshot—**tiro, m; disparo, m; balazo, m**

## H

hair—**pelo, m; cabello, m**
hairy—**peludo, -a; velludo, -a**
half—**medio, -a; mitad, f**
half-brother—**medio hermano, m**
half-sister—**media hermana, f**
hand—**mano, f**
handcuffs—**esposas, f; manillas, f**
handkerchief—**pañuelo, m**
handsome—**guapo, -a**
hangover—**crudo, -a**
happy—**feliz, alegre, contento,- a**
harbor—**puerto, m**
hard—**duro, -a; difícil**
harm—**daño, m**
harvest—**cosecha, f**
harvester—**cosechero, m; segadora, f**
harvest season—**pizca, f**
hat—**sombrero, m**
hate—**odio, m**
hawk—**gavilán, m**
hay—**heno, m; sacate, m**
head—**cabeza, f**
health—**salud, f**
hearing—**audiencia, f**
heart—**corazón, m**
heat—**calor, m**
heater—**calorífero, m**
heavy—**pesado, -a**
heel—**talón, m**
helicopter—**helicóptero, m**
hell—**infierno, m**
hello—**hola, bueno**
help—**ayuda, f**
hen—**gallina, f**
herb—**hierba, f; yerba, f**
herd—**ganado, m; rebaño, m**
here—**aquí, acá**
hide—**piel, f**
hidden—**escondido, -a**
high—**alto, -a**
high priced—**caro, -a; costoso, -a**
highway—**carretera, f; calzada, f**
hill—**loma, f; cerro, m**
hip—**cadera, f**
history—**historia, f**
hoe—**azadón, m**
hog—**marrano, -a; puerco, -a**
hole—**agujero, m; pozo, m; hoyo, m**
holiday—**día de fiesta, m**
holster—**funda, f**
home—**casa, f; hogar, m; domicilio, m**
home (at)—**en casa**
homeland—**patria, f; tierra, f**
homework—**tarea, f**
honest—**honesto, -a**
hope—**esperanza, f**

horse—**caballo, m**
horn (auto)—**bocina, f; pito, m**
horn (animal)—**cuerno, m**
horseshoe—**herradura, f**
horse stable—**caballeriza, f**
hose—**media, f**
hose (garden)—**manguera, f**
hospital—**hospital, m**
host—**huésped, m**
hostess—**huéspeda, f; fichera** (B-girl), **f** (slang)
hot—**caliente**
hotel—**hotel, m**
hour—**hora, f**
house—**casa, f**
household goods—**muebles, m; menaje de casa, m**
housekeeper—**ama de llaves, f; doméstica, f**
housemaid—**sirvienta, f; criada, f**
house trailer—**casa de remolque, f**
housewife—**ama de casa, f (el)**
how—**como**
however—**sin embargo**
how long—**cuanto tiempo**
how many—**cuantos, -as**
how much—**cuanto, -a**
hundred—**cien(to)**
hunger—**hambre, f (el)**
hungover—**crudo, -a** (slang)
hurricane—**huracán, m**
hurry!—**¡ándale!; ¡apresúrese!**
husband—**esposo, m; marido, m**

## I

ice—**hielo, m**
ice cream—**helado, m; nieve, f**
idea—**idea, f**
identical—**idéntico, -a**
identification—**identificación, f**
idiot—**idiota, m-f**
if—**si**
if (that is) so—**si es así**
ill—**enfermo, -a; malo, -a**
illegal—**ilegal**
illegally—**ilegalmente**
ilegitimate child—**hijo, -a natural; hijo, -a ilegítimo, -a**
illiterate—**analfabeto, -a**
illness—**enfermedad, f**
immediately—**en seguida, inmediatamente**
immigrant—**inmigrante, m**
immigrant inspector—**inspector de inmigración, m**
immigration—**inmigración, f**
immoral—**inmoral**
importance—**importancia, f**
important—**importante**
impossible—**imposible**
impression—**impresión, f**
in—**en**
inch—**pulgada, f**
incident—**incidente, m**
independence—**independencia, f**
independent—**independiente**
Indian—**indio, -a**
indolence—**desidia, f; indolencia, f**
industry—**industria, f**
in front—**en frente, delante**
inhabitant—**habitante, m**
ink—**tinta, f**
innocent—**inocente**
in order (to)—**para**
in order that—**de manera que, para que**
insane—**loco, -a**
insecticide—**insecticida, f**
inside—**dentro (de)**
inspector—**inspector, m**
in spite of—**a pesar de**
instead of—**en vez de**
intelligent—**inteligente**
intention—**intención, f**
interest—**interés, m**
interior—**interior, m**
international—**internacional**
intestine—**tripa, f; intestino, m**
intimate—**íntimo, -a**
investigation—**investgación, f**
iron—**hierro, m; fierro, m**
iron (clothes)—**plancha, f**
irrigation ditch—**acequia, f**
island—**isla, f**
is there?—**¿hay?**
Italian—**italiano, -a**
Italy—**Italia**

## J

jack (auto)—**gato, m; yaque, m** (slang)

jacket—chaqueta, f
jack rabbit—liebre, f
jail—cárcel, f
janitor—portero, m; conserje, m
January—enero
jaw—quijada, f; mandíbula, f
jewel—joya, f
jeweler—joyero, m
jewelry—alhajas, f; joyas, f
jewelery shop—joyería, f
job—trabajo, m; chamba, f (slang)
journey—viaje, m
judge—juez, m
juice—jugo, m
July—julio
June—junio
jury—jurado, m
just—no más, nada más, justo, -a
justice—justicia, f
justice of peace—juez de paz, m

### K

key—llave, f
khaki—kaki, caqui
kid—cabrito, m; chavalo, -a (slang); chamaco, -a (slang)
kidnaper—secuestrador, m
kidnaping—secuestro, m
kidney—riñon, m
kilogram—kilogramo, m
kilometer—kilómetro, m
kind—clase, f; bondadoso, -a
kiss—beso, m
kitchen—cocina, f
kitchen utensils—trastos de cocina, m
kite—papalote, m
knapsack—mochila, f
knee—rodilla, f
knife—navaja, f; cuchillo, m
knife (large)—machete, m
knowledge—sabiduría, f; conocimiento, m

### L

labor—labor, f; trabajo, m
laborer—trabajador, m; jornalero, m
lack—falta, f
lad—mozo, m; joven, m
lady—señora, f; señorita, f
lake—lago, m; laguna, f
lamb—borrego, -a; cordero
lame—rengo, -a; cojo, -a
land—tierra, f; terreno, m
landing (airplane)—aterrizaje
landlord—patrón, m
language—idioma, m; lengua, f
lard—manteca, f
large—grande
large-bellied—panzón, -a
lariat—lazo, m
lasso—lazo, m
last—último, -a
last month—el mes pasado
last name—apellido, m
last night—anoche
last week—la semana pasada
last year—el año pasado
late—tarde
lately—últimamente
later—después, más tarde
launch—lancha, f; chalupa, f
laundress—lavandera, f
laundry—lavandería, f
law—ley, f
lawyer—abogado, -a; licenciado, -a
laziness—desidia, f; pereza, f
lazy—perezoso, -a; flojo, -a (slang)
lead—plomo, m
leader—líder, m; jefe, m
leaf—hoja, f
lean—delgado, -a; flaco, -a
least (at)—a lo menos, por lo menos
leather—cuero, m; baqueta, f
leatherworker—talabartero, m
left—izquierdo, -a
leg—pierna, f
legal—legal
legally—legalmente
lemon—limón, m
length—longitud, m; largo
less—menos
lesson—lección, f
let's see—vamos a ver
letter—carta, f; letra, f
level ground—llano, m; plano, m
liberty—libertad, f
license—licencia, f
license plate—placa, f

lie—**mentira, f**
life—**vida, f**
light—**luz, f**
light (weight)—**ligero, -a**
light (color)—**claro**
light (electric)—**luz eléctrica, f**
light (bulb)—**foco, m**
lighter (cigarette)—**encendedor, m**
like—**como**
like—**semejante**
like that—**así**
like this—**así**
likewise—**también**
lime—**lima, f**
limit—**límite, m**
line—**línea, f**
lip—**labio, m**
list—**lista, f**
little—**poco, -a** (quantity); **pequeño, -a** (size)
livestock—**ganado, m**
living—**vida, f; subsistencia, f**
living room—**sala, f**
load—**carga, f**
lobster—**langosta, f**
local—**local**
location—**lugar, m; sitio, m**
long—**largo, -a**
look out!—**¡cuidado!**
loose—**flojo, -a; suelto, -a**
love—**amor, m**
low—**bajo, -a**
luck—**suerte, f**
lunch—**merienda, f; lonche, m (slang)**
lunch counter—**lonchería, f (slang)**
lung—**pulmón, m**

## M

machine—**máquina, f**
machinery—**maquinaria, f**
machinist—**maquinista, m-f**
mad—**loco, -a; enojado, -a**
magazine—**revista, f**
maid—**criada, f**
mail—**correo, m**
mailman—**cartero, m**
maimed—**mocho, -a**
main boss—**mero gallo, m (slang)**
maize—**maíz, m**
maize field—**milpa, f**
mamma—**mamá, f**
man—**hombre, m; señor, m**
manager—**gerente, m; director, m**
mandate—**orden, m-f**
manner—**manera, f; modo, m**
many—**muchos, -as**
map—**mapa, m**
March—**marzo**
mare—**yegua, f**
margin—**margen, m; orilla, f**
marijuana—**marijuana, f**
mark—**marca, f; seña, f; signo, m**
market—**mercado, m**
market place—**mercado, m**
marriage—**casamiento, m; matrimonio, m**
marriage certificate—**certificado de matrimonio, m**
married—**casado, -a**
mason—**albañil, m**
mass—**misa, f** (church); **conjunto, m** (people)
matches—**cerillos, m; fósforos, m**
matter—**asunto, m**
May—**mayo**
maybe—**quizá, quizás, tal vez**
mayor—**presidente municipal, m; alcalde, m**
meal—**comida, f**
mean—**malo, -a**
meanwhile—**mientras tanto, entre tanto**
meat—**carne, f**
meat market—**carnicería, f**
mechanic—**mecánico, m**
medallion—**medalla, f**
medicine—**medicina, f**
meeting—**junta, f**
member—**miembro, -a**
menu—**carta, f; lista, f; menú, m**
merchant—**comerciante, m**
metal—**metal, m**
method—**método, m; modo, m**
Mexican—**mexicano, -a**
Mexican dollar—**peso, m**
mid-day—**mediodía, m**
middle—**medio**
midnight—**medianoche, f**
midwife—**partera, f**
mile—**milla, f**

milk—leche, f
milkman—lechero, m
mill—molino, m
miller—molinero, m
mine—mina, f
miner—minero, m
mineral—mineral, m
minor—menor (de edad)
minus—menos
minute—minuto, m
miracle—milagro, m
Miss—señorita, f
mistake—falta, f; error, m
mistress—mujer de pie, f; querida, f
mode—modo, -a; manera, f
mold—moho, m
mole—lunar, m
Mom—mamá, f
moment—momento, m
Monday—lunes, m
money—dinero, m; moneda, f
month—mes, m
moon—luna, f
more—más
morning—mañana, f
mosquito—zancudo, m; mosquito, m
moss—moho, m
mother—madre, f; mamá, f
mother-in-law—suegra, f; madre política, f
motive—motivo, m
motor—motor, m
mountain—montaña, f; monte, m
mouse—ratón, m
mouth—boca, f
movie (theatre)—cine, m
Mr.—señor, m
Mrs.—señora, f
much—mucho, -a
mud—lodo, m
mule—mula, f
municipality—municipio, m
murder—asesinato, m; homicidio, m
murderer—asesino, -a
music—música, f
musician—músico, m
mustache—bigote, m
mustard—mostaza, f
mutilated—mocho, -a

## N

name—nombre, m
namesake—tocayo, -a
narcotic—narcótico, m
narrow—angosto, -a; estrecho, -a
nation—nación, f
national—nacional
nationality—nacionalidad, f
native—nativo, -a
native country—tierra, f; patria, f
naturalization—naturalización, f
near—cerca (de)
nearly—casi
necessary—necesario, -a
neck—cuello, m; pescuezo, m
neighbor—vecino, -a
neighborhood—barrio, m; vecindad, f
neither—ni, tampoco
neither . . . nor—ni . . . ni
nephew—sobrino, m
nervous—nervioso, -a
never—nunca, jamás
nevertheless—sin embargo
new—nuevo, -a
news—noticia(s), f
newspaper—periódico, m; diario, m
New Year—año nuevo, m
next—después, siguiente, luego, próximo, -a
next month—el mes que viene, el mes que entra
next week—la semana que viene, la semana que entra
next year—el año que viene, el año que entra
nickname—sobrenombre, m; apodo, m
niece—sobrina, f
night—noche, f
night before last—anteanoche
nightfall—anochecer, m
nine—nueve
ninth—noveno, -a
no—no
nobody—nadie
noise—ruido, m
no longer—ya no
no more—ya no
none—ninguno, -a

nook—**rincón, m**
noon—**mediodía, m**
no one—**nadie**
nor—**ni**
north—**norte, m**
nose—**nariz, f**
not—**no**
not any—**ningún (o), -a**
not anymore—**ya no**
nothing—**nada**
not yet—**todavía no**
November—**noviembre**
novice—**novicio, -a**
now—**ahora**
nowadays—**hoy día**
number—**número, m**
nurse—**enfermera, f**
nurse (for children)—**niñera, f**
nut—**nuez, f**

### O

oak—**roble, m**
oath—**juramento, m**
oats—**avena, f**
occupation—**ocupación, f**
occupied—**ocupado, -a**
October—**octubre**
of—**de**
of course—**claro, por supuesto, seguro que sí**
off duty—**franco, -a**
offense—**ofensa, f**
offer—**oferta, f**
office—**oficina, f**
officer—**oficial, m**
official—**oficial, m**
offspring—**cría, f**
often—**a menudo**
oil—**aciete, m**
okay—**está bien**
old—**viejo, -a; anciano, -a**
older—**mayor**
oldest—**mayor**
on—**en, sobre**
once—**una vez**
(at) once—**en seguida**
one—**un(o), -a**
one-eyed—**tuerto, -a**
one hundred—**cien (to)**
on foot—**a pie**
onion—**cebolla, f**
only—**nada más, no más, sino, solo, único, -a**
on the outside—**por fuera**
on time—**a tiempo**
open—**abierto, -a**
opium—**opio, m**
opportunity—**oportunidad, f**
opposite—**opuesto, -a**
or—**o, u**
orange—**naranja, f**
orange tree—**naranjo, m**
order—**orden, f**
orphan—**huérfano, -a**
organization—**organización, f**
orient—**oriente, m; este, m**
oriental—**oriental**
origin—**origen, m**
original—**original**
other—**otro, -a**
otherwise—**de otra manera, de otro modo**
our—**nuestro, -a, etc.**
ours—**el nuestro, etc.**
out—**afuera, fuera**
outside—**afuera, fuera**
over—**sobre, encima**
overalls—**pantalón de pechera**
overcoat—**abrigo, m; sobretodo, m**
over there—**allá**
owner—**dueño, -a; amo, -a (el)**
oyster—**ostión, m**

### P

package—**paquete, m**
packing shed—**bodega, f**
page—**página, f**
pain—**dolor, m**
painter—**pintor, -a**
pair—**par, m**
pants—**pantalones, m**
paper—**papel, m**
papa—**papá, m**
pardon—**perdón, m**
parents—**padres, m**
park—**parque, m**
part—**parte, f**
party—**fiesta, f**
pass—**paso, m**
passage—**pasaje, m**

passenger—pasajero, -a
past—pasado, -a; último, -a
pasture—potrero, m; pasto, m
path—vereda, f; senda, f; sendero, m
patrol—patrulla, f; migra, f (slang)
patrol inspector—patrullero, m
paved—pavimentado, -a
paw—pata, f
pay day—día de pago, m
peach—durazno, m
peace officer—alguacil, m
pear—pera, f
pen (writing)pluma, f
pen (stock)—corral, m
pencil—lápiz, m
penitentiary—penitenciaría, f; casa de corrección, f
penknife—navaja, f
penny—centavo, m
pepper—chile, m; pimiento, m; pimienta, f
people—gente, f
perhaps—quizá, quizás, tal vez
perjury—perjurio, m
permanent—permanente
permission—permiso, m
permit—permiso, m
person—persona, f
pharmacy—farmacia, f; botica, f
photograph—fotografía, f; foto, f
pick(axe)—pico, m
picker—pizcador, -a
picking season—pizca, f
picture—retrato, m; foto, f
picture show—cine, m; vistas, f (slang)
picture film—película, f
piece—pedazo, m; pieza, f
pig—marrano, -a; puerco, -a
pillow—almohada, f
pillow case—funda de almohada, f
pilot—piloto, m; aviador, m
pimp—alcahuete, m
pin—alfiler, m; broche, m
pineapple—piña, f
pistol—pistola, f
pity—lástima
place—lugar, m; sitio, m
plant—planta, f
planter—plantador, m; sembrador,
plate—plato, m; placa, f
plaza—plaza, f
please—por favor
plow—arado, m
plumber—plomero, m
pocket—bolsa, f; bolsillo, m
pocket-book—bolsa, f; portamoneda, m
pocketknife—navaja, f
poison—veneno, m
point—punto, m; punta, f
pole—palo, m; vara, f
police force—policía, f
policeman—policía, m
pool—charco, m; billares, m
pool hall—billar, m; salón de billares, m
poor—pobre
Pope—Papa, m
poplar—álamo, m
pork—puerco, m
port—puerto, m
porter—portero, m
port of entry—puerto de entrada, m; garita, f (slang)
portrait—retrato, m
possible—posible
post—poste, m; palo, m
postman—cartero, m
postmaster—administrador de correos, m
post office—correo, m; estafeta, f
potato—papa, f; (sweet) camote, m
pound—libra, f
power—poder, m; fuerza, f
prayer—oración, f
preceding—anterior
precise—preciso, -a
presence—presencia, f
present—presente, regalo, m
president—presidente, m
pretty—bonito, -a; lindo, -a
price—precio, m
priest—cura, m; sacerdote, m; padre, m
print—huella, f; impresión, f
prison—prisión, f; cárcel, f
prisoner—prisionero, -a; preso, -a
problem—problema, m
proceedings—procedimientos, m; actas, f

process—proceso, m
product—producto, m
professor—professor, -a
promise—promesa, f
promoter—promotor, m; empresario, m
proof—prueba, f
property—propiedad, f
prostitute—prostituta, f
prostitution—prostitución, f
provided (that)—con tal que, siempre que
puddle—charco, m
pug-nosed—chato, -a
pulse—pulso, m
pump—bomba, f
punctual—puntual
pupil—alumno, -a; pupila, f (eye)
pure—puro, -a
purpose—propósito, m
purse—bolsa, f; bolsillo, m

### Q

quail—codorniz, f
quarrel—disgusto, m; riña, f
quart—cuarto, m
quarter—peseta, f (coin); cuarto, m (measure)
question—pregunta, f
quick—pronto, -a
quickly—pronto
quota—cuota, f

### R

rabbit—conejo, -a
race—raza, f
radish—rábano, m
radio—radio, m-f (instrument, m; transmission, f)
raft—balsa, f
rag—trapo, m
railroad—ferrocarril, m
railroad track—traque de——, m; vía, f
rain—lluvia, f
rake—rastrillo, m
ram—carnero, m
ranch—rancho, m
rancher—ranchero, m
ranch foreman—caporal, m
rape—rapto, m; estupro, m
rapid—rápido, -a
rare—raro, -a
rarely—muy raro (coll); casi nunca (coll)
rascal—pícaro, m
rat—rata, f
rattle snake—víbora de cascabel, f
ravine—arroyo, m; cañada, f
raw—crudo, -a
ready—listo, -a
real—real, mero, -a (slang)
really—de veras
reason—razón, f; causa, f
receipt—recibo, m
recent—reciente
recently—recientemente
record—récord, m; transcripición, f; disco, m (phono)
red—rojo, -a; colorado, -a
relative—pariente, -a
rendezvous—cita, f
rent—renta, f
report—reporte, m
republic—república, f
requirement—requisito, m
residence—residencia, f; domicilio, m
resources—bienes, m; riquezas, f
restaurant—restaurante, m
rest room—servicio, m; cuarto de baño, m; excusado, m
retail—al por menor
reunion—reunión, f
review—repaso, m
revolver—revólver, m
rib—costilla, f
rice—arroz, m
rich—rico, -a
rifle—rifle, m; fusil, m
right?—¿verdad?
right—derecho, -a; derecho, m
right away—pronto, prontito, en seguida, inmediatamente
right now—ahorita, ahora mismo
ring—anillo, m
river—río, m
road—camino, m
robber—ladrón, m; ratero, m
robbery—robo, m

rock—piedra, f; roca, f; peñasco, m
rod—vara, f
rogue—pícaro, m
roof—techo, m
room—cuarto, m
rooster—gallo, m
rope—soga, f; reata, f
rose—rosa, f
rough—áspero, -a
round—redondo, -a
round trip fare—pasaje de ida y vuelta, m; pasaje redondo, m
route—rumbo, m; vía, f; ruta, f
row boat—bote de remos, m
rubber—hule, m; goma, f
rule—regla, f
ruler—regla, f (measure); gobernador, m (person)
ruralman—campesino, m
rust—moho, m

## S

sabotage—sabotaje, m
sack—costal, m (cloth); bolsa, f (paper)
sad—triste
safe—seguro, -a
sailor—marinero, m
saint—santo, -a; san
salary—sueldo, m; salario, m
sale—venta, f
saloon—cantina, f; salón, m
salt—sal, f
same—igual, mismo, -a
sample—muestra, f
sand—arena, f
sandal—sandalia, f; hurache, m
sandwich—sandwich, m (slang); emparedado, m
Saturday—sábado, m
sausage—chorizo, m; salchicha, f
scale—balanza, f; báscula, f; escala, f
scar—cicatriz, f
scarcely—apenas
school—escuela, f
sea—mar, m
season—estación, f
seat—asiento, m
second—segundo, m; segundo, -a
secretary—secretario, -a
seed—semilla, f
sentence—sentencia, f; oración, f
sentry box—garita, f
September—septiembre
servant—sirviente, -ta
service—servicio, m
seven—siete
seventeen—diez y siete
seventh—séptimo, -a
several—varios, -as
sex—sexo, m
shame—vergüenza, f; lástima, f
sharecropper—mediero, m
sharp—filoso, -a; en punto (time)
sheep—borrego, m; carnero, m; oveja, f
sheriff—jerife, m; sherife, m (slang)
shin—canilla, f
ship—barco, m; buque, m; vapor, m
shirt—camisa, f
shoe—zapato, m
shoe shop—zapatería, f
shop—taller, m
shore—costa, f; playa, f; orilla, f (bank of a stream)
short—bajo, -a; corto, -a; chaparro, -a; chapo (slang)
shorts—calzoncillos, m
short time—rato
shot—tiro, m; disparo, m; balazo, m
shot gun—escopeta, f
shoulder—hombro, m
shovel—pala, f
shrimp—camarón, m
sick—enfermo, -a; malo, -a
side—lado, m
sidewalk—banqueta, f; acera, f
sight—vista, f
sign—seña, f; marca, f; signo, m; rótulo, m; letrero, m
signature—firma, f
silk—seda, f
silver—plata, f
since—desde
single—soltero, -a
sir—señor, m
sister—hermana, f
sister-in-law—cuñada, f
site—sitio, m; lugar, m

six—**seis**
sixteen—**diez y seis; dieciséis**
sixth—**sexto, -a**
sixty—**sesenta**
size—**tamaño, m**
skin—**cutis, m; piel, f**
skinny—**flaco, -a**
skirt—**falda, f**
skunk—**zorillo, -a**
sky—**cielo, m**
slender—**delgado, -a; flaco, -a**
sling—**honda, f**
slip—**fondo, m**
slipper—**chancla, f; sandalia, f**
slow—**despacio; lento**
slowly—**despacio, lentamente**
small—**pequeño, -a; chico, -a**
smoke—**humo, m**
smooth—**suave, liso, -a; llano, -a**
smuggled goods—**contrabando, m**
smuggler—**contrabandista, m-f**
snake—**víbora, f; culebra, f**
snow—**nieve, f**
so—**así que, conque, tan, por eso**
soap—**jabón, m**
social security card—**tarjeta de seguro social, f**
sock—**calcetín, m**
soft—**suave, blando, -a**
soil—**tierra, f; suelo, m**
soldier—**soldado, m**
so many—**tantos, -as**
some—**algún(o), -a; unos, -as**
somebody—**alguien; alguna persona**
someone—**alguien, alguna persona**
some place—**algún lugar**
something—**alguna cosa, algo**
sometimes—**a veces**
so much—**tanto, -a**
son—**hijo, m**
son-in-law—**yerno, m**
soon—**pronto**
sort—**clase, f; modo, m**
soul—**alma, f (el)**
soup—**caldo, m; sopa, f**
south—**sur, m**
Spain—**España**
Spaniard—**español, -a**
Spanish—**español** (language), **m; español, -a**
special—**especial**
spectacles—**anteojos, m; lentes, m**
speed—**velocidad, f**
spider—**araña, f**
spinach—**espinaca, f**
spoon—**cuchara, f**
spoon (tea)—**cucharilla, f**
sport—**deporte, m**
sporting—**deportivo, -a**
spring—**primavera, f; ojo de agua, m**
spy—**espía, m-f**
squall—**chubasco**
square—**plaza, f; cuadrado, -a**
squash—**calabaza, f**
stair—**escalón, m**
stall—**puesto, m**
stamp—**timbre, m; estampilla, f; sello, m**
stand—**puesto, m**
star—**estrella, f**
state—**estado, m**
statement—**declaración, f**
station—**estación (de), f**
stationwagon—**camioneta, f**
status—**estado, m**
steam—**vapor, m**
steer—**novillo, m; rez, f**
step—**paso, m; escalón** (stairs), **m**
stepchild—**hijastro, -a**
stepfather—**padrastro, m**
stepmother—**madrastra, f**
stick—**palo, m; vara, f**
still—**todavía, aún**
stocking—**media, f; calcetín, m**
stomach—**estómago, m**
stone—**piedra, f**
stop—**alto, basta, parada, f**
store—**tienda, f**
storeroom—**bodega, f; almacén, m**
storm—**tormenta, f; chubasco, m**
story—**cuento, m; historia, f**
story (floor)—**piso**
stove—**estufa, f**
stowaway—**polizón, m**
straight—**derecho, -a; recto, -a**
stranger—**extranjero, -a; desconocido, -a**
statue—**estatua, f**
straw—**paja, f**
street—**calle, f**

streetcar—tranvía, m
strength—fuerza, f; poder, m
strike—huelga, f (work stoppage)
string—cordón, m; hilo, m; cuerda, f
striped—listado, -a
strong—fuerte; poderoso, -a
stub (ticket)—talón, m
student—estudiante, m-f; alumno, -a
study—estudio, m
subject—sujeto, m
suburb—barrio, m
such—tal
suddenly—de repente
sufficient—suficiente
sugar—azúcar, m
suit—traje, m
suit (law)—queja, f; pleito, m
suitcase—maleta, f; veliz, m
sum—suma, f
summer—verano, m
sun—sol, m
Sunday—domingo, m
supper—cena, f
sure—seguro que sí, seguro, -a
surname—apellido, m
suspicion—sospecha, f
suspicious—sospechoso, -a
swarthy—trigueño, -a; moreno, -a
sweater—suéter, m; chamarra, f
sweet—dulce
sweetheart—novio, -a
swimsuit—traje de baño, m

## T

table—mesa, f
tail—cola, f; rabo, m
tailor—sastre, m
tailor shop—sastrería, f
tall—alto, -a
tangerine—mandarina, f; tangerina, f
tank—tanque, m
target—blanco, m
task—tarea, f
tatoo—tatuaje, m; tatú, m
taxi—taxi, m; carro de sitio, m
tea—té, m
teacher—maestro, -a
teeth—dientes, m
telegram—telegrama, m
telephone—teléfono, m
television—televisión, f
television set—televisor, m
ten—diez
tenth—décimo, -a
tequila—tequila, m
terrible—terrible
territory—territorio, m; terreno, m
test—prueba, f; examen, m
testimony—testimonio, m
Texas—Texas (Tejas)
than—que
thanks—gracias, f
that—ese, -a; aquel, -lla; eso, que
that's why—por eso, así que
that which—lo que
the—el, la, los, las
theater—cine, m; teatro, m
then—entonces, luego, después
there—allí, allá, ahí
there are—hay
therefore—por eso, así que
there is—hay
there was—había
there were—había
these—estos, -as
thick—grueso, -a; espeso, -a; denso, -a
thief—ladrón, m; ratero, m
thin—delgado, -a; flaco, -a
thing—cosa, f
third—tercero, -a
thirteen—trece
thirty—treinta
this—este, esta, esto
those—esos, -as; aquellos, -as
though—aunque
thousand—mil
thread—hilo, m
threat—amenaza, f
three—tres
through—por
thumb—pulgar, m
Thursday—jueves, m
thus—así
ticket—boleto, m; billete, m
tie—corbata, f
time—tiempo, m; vez, f; hora, f
tin—lata, f; hojalata, f; estaño, m
tire—llanta, f

tired—cansado, -a
title—título, m
to—a, para
tobacco—tabaco, m
today—hoy
toe—dedo (del pie), m
toenail—uña, f
together—junto(s), -a(s)
toilet—servicio, m; excusado, m
tomato—tomate, m
tomorrow—mañana
tongue—lengua, f
tonight—esta noche, a la noche
too—también
tools—herramienta(s), f
too many—muchos, -as; demasiados, -as
too much—mucho, -a; demasiado, -a
tooth—diente, m
top—cima, f; cumbre, f
tourist—turista, m-f
toward—hacia
town—pueblo, m
tracks—huellas, f
track (railroad)—vía, f; riel, m; traque, (slang)
tractor—tractor, m
tractor driver—tractorista, m-f
trail—pisada, f; huellas, f; vereda, f; sendero, m
train—tren, m
trainee—novicio, m
traitor—traidor, -a
traveler—viajero, -a
tree—árbol, m
trial—juicio, m
trip—viaje, m
trousers—pantalones, m
truck—camión, m; troque, m (slang); troca, f (slang)
truck driver—troquero, m (slang)
true—verdad, cierto
trunk—baúl, m; petaca, f
trunk (car)—cajuela, f
truth—verdad, f
Tuesday—martes, m
turkey—guajalote, m; cócono, m (coll)
twelve—doce
twenty—veinte
twig—vara, f
twin—gemelo, m; cuate, m
two—dos

### U

ugly—feo, -a
uncle—tío, m
under—debajo (de), bajo, abajo
under oath—bajo juramento
undershirt—camiseta, f
underwear—ropa interior, f
uniform—uniforme, m
United States—Estados Unidos, m
university—universidad, f
unjust—injusto, -a
unknown—desconocido, -a
unless—a menos que
until—hasta, hasta que
up—arriba
upon—sobre, al
upright—justo, -a
upstairs—arriba
up to—hasta
useful—útil
usually—generalmente, usualmente

### V

vacation—vacación(es), f
vaccination—vacuna, f
valid—válido, -a
valise—veliz, m
valley—valle, m
value—valor, m; precio, m
various—varios, -as
vegetable—legumbre, f; verdura, f
verb—verbo, m
very—muy
vest—chaleco, m
view—vista, f
village—aldea, f; villa, f; población, f
vinegar—vinagre, m
violation—violación, f
violence—violencia, f
visa—visa, f
visible—visible
visit—visita, f
visitor—visitante, m
voice—voz, f
voluntarily—voluntariamente

voluntary—**voluntario, -a**
volunteer—**voluntario, -a**
vote—**voto, m**

## W

wages—**sueldo, m**
wagon—**vagón, m**
waist—**cintura, f**
waiter—**mesero, -a**
waiting room—**sala de espera, f**
walking cane—**bastón, m**
wall—**pared, f**
war—**guerra, f**
warehouse—**bodega, f; almacén, m**
warm—**tibio, -a; caliente**
warning—**aviso, m**
warrant of arrest)—**orden de arresto, m-f, fallo de arresto, m**
wart—**verruga, f**
was there?—**¿había?**
watch—**reloj, m**
watchmaker—**relojero, m**
watch out!—**¡cuidado!**
water—**agua, f (el)**
waterhole—**tanque, m; charco, m**
wave—**ola, f; onda, f**
wax—**cera, f**
way—**rumbo, m; camino, f; vía, f**
weak—**débil**
weapon—**arma, f (el)**
weather—**tiempo, m**
wedding—**boda, f; casamiento, m**
Wednesday—**miércoles, m**
weed—**hierba, f; yerba, f**
week—**semana, f**
weight—**peso, m**
well—**noria, f; pozo, m; pues, bien**
were there?—**¿había?**
west—**oeste, m; poniente, m; occidente, m**
wet—**mojado, -a**
wetback—**mojado, -a (slang)**
what—**lo que**
what?—**¿qué?**
what color—**de que color**
whatever—**cualquier (a)**
what for—**para que**
wheat—**trigo, m**
wheel—**rueda, f**
when—**cuando**
where—**donde**
whether—**si**
which—**cual, que**
while—**mientras**
white—**blanco, -a**
who?—**¿quién?; ¿quiénes?**
who—**quien, -es; que**
whole—**entero, -a**
wholesale—**al por mayor**
wholesale house—**almacén, m**
whom—**quien, -es**
whose—**de quien, -es, cuyo**
why—**por que**
wide—**ancho, -a**
widow—**viuda, f**
widower—**viudo, m**
width—**anchura, f; ancho, m**
wiener—**salchicha, f**
wife—**esposa, f**
wig—**peluca, f**
wild—**salvaje, silvestre**
willing—**dispuesto, -a**
wind—**viento, m**
windmill—**papalote, m; molino de viento, m**
windshield—**parabrisa, m**
window—**ventana, f**
wine—**vino, m**
winter—**invierno, m**
wire—**alambre, m**
wise—**sabio, -a; erudito, -a**
with—**con**
within—**dentro (de)**
without—**sin**
witness—**testigo, -a**
wolf—**lobo, -a**
woman—**mujer, f; señora, f**
wood—**madera, f**
wood (fire)—**leña, f**
wood chopper—**leñador, m**
woods—**monte, m; bosque, m**
wool—**lana, f**
word—**palabra, f**
work—**trabajo, m; empleo, m; labor, f; chamba, f (slang)**
worker—**trabajador, -a; obrero, -a**
workshop—**taller, m**
world—**mundo, m**
world war—**guerra mundial, f**
worse—**peor**
wreck—**choque, m**

wrinkle—**arruga, f**
wrist—**pulso, m; muñeca, f**

## Y

yard—**yarda**
year—**año, m**
yellow—**amarillo, -a**
yes—**sí**
yesterday—**ayer**
yet—**todavía, aún**
yonder—**allá**
young—**joven, m-f**
young lady—**señorita, f**
young lad—**mozo, m**
young goat—**cabrito, m**
youngster—**chamaco, -a (coll); chavalo, -a (slang)**

## SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**a**—to, at
**abajo**—under, below, down
**abierto, -a**—open
**abogado, m**—lawyer
**abrigo, m**—coat, overcoat
**abril**—April
**abuela, f**—grandmother
**abuelo, m**—grandfather
**acá**—here
**acento, m**—accent
**acequia, f**—(irrigation) ditch
**acera, f**—sidewalk
**acerca de**—about, concerning
**acre, m**—acre
**acta de nacimiento, f (el)**—birth certificate
**acumulador, m**—battery (storage)
**además (de)**—besides
**adicto, -a**—addict
**adiós**—good-bye
**admisión, f**—admission
**aduana, f**—customs
**aduanero, m**—customs agent
**aeropuerto, m**—airport
**afuera**—outside, out
**agosto**—August
**agua, f (el)**—water
**agujero, m**—hole
**ahijado, -a**—godchild
**ahora**—now
**ahora mismo**—right now
**ahorita**—right now
**aire, m**—air
**a la caída de la tarde**—at sun down
**a la caída del sol**—at sun down
**a la madrugada**—at dawn
**al amanecer**—at dawn
**alambre, m**—wire
**alambrista, m-f**—fence jumper (slang)
**álamo, m**—cottonwood, poplar
**a la noche**—tonight
**al anochecer**—at dusk
**albañil, m**—bricklayer, mason
**alcahuete, m**—pimp
**aldea, f**—village
**alemán, -a**—German
**al fin**—finally, at last
**al fin de**—at the end of
**algo**—something, anything
**algodón, m**—cotton
**alguacil, m**—constable, peace officer
**alguien**—someone, somebody, anyone, anybody
**alguna cosa**—something, anything
**alguna vez**—ever
**algún lugar**—anywhere, some place, any place, somewhere
**algún(o), -a**—some, any
**alhajas, f**—jewelry
**alimento, m**—food
**al lado (de)**—beside
**alma, f (el)**—soul
**almacén, m**—wholesale house, warehouse
**almohada, f**—pillow
**al principio**—at first, at the beginning
**alrededor**—around
**alto**—stop
**alto, -a**—tall, high
**alumno, -a**—pupil, student
**allá**—over there, yonder, there
**allí**—there
**ama de casa, f (el)**—housewife
**amanecer, m**—dawn, daybreak
**amarillo, -a**—yellow
**amenaza, f**—threat

a menos (de)—unless
americano, -a—American
amigo, -a—friend
amo, m—owner
analfabeto, -a—illiterate
anciano, -a—old
anillo, m—ring
anoche—last night
anochecer, m—nightfall, dusk
anteanoche—night before last
anteayer—day before yesterday
anteojos, m—eyeglasses
anterior—preceding, former
anteriormente—formerly
antes (de)—before, formerly
anuncio, m—announcement
año, m—year
año nuevo, m—new year
apellido, m—last name, surname
apenas—scarcely, barely
a pesar de—in spite of
a pie—on foot
aquel—that (at a distance)
aquella—that (at a distance)
aquellos, -as—those (at a distance)
aquí—here
arado, m—plow
araña, f—spider
árbol, m—tree
archivo, m—file, archive
arena, f—sand
arete, m—earring
arma, f (el)—weapon (arm)
arreglo, m—arrangement
arriba—above, up
arroz, m—rice
artista, m-f—artist
asesinato, m—murder
asesino, m—murderer
así—thus, like this, like that
asiento, m—seat
asiento de atrás, m—back seat
asiento de enfrente, m—front seat
así que—therefore, for that reason, so
asunto, m—matter
a tiempo—on time
atrás (de)—behind, back
audiencia, f—hearing
aun—yet, still
aunque—although, though
auto, m—auto, car
autobús, m—bus
automóvil, m—automobile
autoridad, f—authority
ave, f (el)—fowl, bird
a veces—at times, sometimes
avenida, f—avenue
aviador, m—pilot
avión, m—airplane
aviso, m—warning, advice
ayer—yesterday
ayer por la mañana—yesterday morning
ayuda, f—help
azteca—Aztec
azúcar, m—sugar
azul—blue

## B

bailarín, -a—dancer
baile, m—dance
bajo—low, short, under
bajo juramento—under oath
balsa, f—raft
banco, m—bank
banco, -a—bench
bandera, f—flag, banner
bandido, m—bandit
banquero, m—banker
banqueta, f—sidewalk
baño, m—bath
baqueta, f—leather
barato, -a—cheap
barba, f—chin, beard
barbacoa, f—barbecue
barbería, f—barber shop
barbero, m—barber
barco, m—boat, barge, ship
barraca, f—barrack
barril, m—barrel
barrio, m—neighborhood, suburb
barro, m—clay
base, f—base
basta—enough, stop
bastante—enough
bastardo, -a—bastard, born out of wedlock
bastón, m—walking cane
batería, f—battery
baúl, m—trunk, chest
becerro, -a—calf
bello, -a—beautiful

beso, m—kiss
betabel, m—beet
bien—well
bigote, m—mustache
billar, m—billiard room, pool hall
billete, m—bill
billetera, f—billfold
biología, f—biology
bistec, m—beefsteak
bizcocho, m—biscuit
blanco, m—target
blanco, -a—white
blusa, f—blouse
boca, f—mouth
boda, f—wedding
bodega, f—storeroom, warehouse
bola, f—ball
boletín, m—bulletin
boleto, m—ticket
bolsa, f—purse, pocket, bag, sack
bolsillo, m—purse, pocket
bollo, m—biscuit (small), cake
bomba, f—pump
bonito, -a—pretty, cute
borrador, m—eraser
borrego, -a—lamb
bota, f—boot
bote, m—boat, can, jail (slang)
bote de remos, m—rowboat
botella, f—bottle
botón, m—button
braceleta, f—bracelet
bracero, m—contract laborer, manual laborer
brazo, m—arm
bueno—hello, all right
bueno, -a—good
bulto, m—bundle
burro, m—donkey
buque, m—ship

## C

caballeriza, f—stable
caballero, m—gentleman
caballo, m—horse
cabello, m—hair
cabeza, f—head
cabra, f—goat
cabrito, m—young goat, kid
cachucha, f—cap
cada—each, every
cadera, f—ship
café, m—coffee, brown
caja, f—box
cajón, m—crate box, drawer
cajuela, f—car trunk
calcetín, m—sock
calendario, m—calendar
caliente—warm, hot
calvo, -a—bald
calzón, m—white pants
calzoncillos, m—shorts
calle, f—street
callejón, m—alley
cama, f—bed
cambio, m—change
camino, m—road, way
camión, m—truck, bus
camioneta, f—stationwagon
camisa, f—shirt
camiseta, f—undershirt
campana, f—bell
campesino, m—ruralman, farmer
campo, m—field, camp, country
canilla, f—forearm, shin
canoa, f—canoe
cantina, f—bar
cantinera, f—barmaid
cantinero, m—bartender
cansado, -a—tired
caporal, m—ranch foreman
cara, f—face
cárcel, f—jail
carga, f—load, freight, cargo
carne, f—meat
carnero, m—sheep, ram
carnicero, m—butcher
caro, -a—expensive
carpintero, m—carpenter
carretera, f—highway
carro, m—car, automobile
carta, f—letter
cartera, f—billfold
cartero, m—mailman, postman
casa, f—house, home
casacorte, f—courthouse
casa de remolque, f—house trailer
casado, -a—married
casi—almost, nearly
casi nunca (coll)—rarely
causa, f—cause
ceja, f—eyebrow
cena, f—dinner, supper

centavo, m—cent
cerca, f—fence
cerca (de)—near, close, about, beside
certificado, m—certificate
certificado de nacimiento, m—birth certificate
cerveza, f—beer
cicatriz, f—scar
ciego, -a—blind
cielo, m—sky, ceiling
cien(to)—one hundred
cierto, -a—certain, true
cigarrillo, m—cigarette
cigarro, m—cigar, cigarette
cinco—five
cine, m—theater, movie
cinto, m—belt, girdle
cintura, f—waist
cinturón, m—belt
cita, f—date, rendezvous, appointment
ciudad, f—city
ciudadanía, f—citizenship
ciudadano, -a—citizen
claramente—clearly
claro, -a—clear
claro—of course
clase, f—class, kind, type
cobija, f—blanket
cocinero, -a—cook
cócono, m—turkey
coche, m—car, coach
codo, m—elbow, stingy (slang)
codorniz, f—quail
cojo, -a—cripple, lame
color, m—color
colorado, -a—red
comadre, f—close friend
comerciante, m—merchant
comida, f—dinner, food
comisionista, m-f—commission merchant
como—as, like, about, how
compadre, m—close friend
compañero, -a—companion
compañía, f—company
compartimiento, m—compartment
completo, -a—complete
con—with
condado, m—county
conejo, -a—rabbit
conmigo—with me
conocido, -a—acquaintance
conocimiento, m—knowledge
conque—so
consigo—with you
cónsul, m—consul
consulado, m—consulate
con tal que—provided
contento, -a—content(ed)
contestación, f—answer
contigo—with you (familiar)
contra—against
contrabandista, m-f—smuggler
contrabando, m—smuggled goods
contraseña, f—baggage check
corazón, m—heart
corbata, f—tie
cordón, m—cord, string
corral, m—corral
corralón, m (slang)—detention camp
correcto, -a—correct
correo, m—post office, mail
cortada, f—cut, cut scar
corte, f—court
corto, -a—short
cosa, f—thing
cosecha, f—harvest
costal, m—sack
costilla, f—rib
costumbre, f—custom
coyote, m—coyote
crema, f—cream
cría, f—brood, offspring, suckling
criada, f—maid
crimen, m—crime
cromo, m—calendar
crudo, -a—raw, crude, hungover
cruz, f—cross
cuadra, f—block
cual—which
cualquier, -a—any, anyone, anybody
cualquier lugar—anywhere, anyplace
cuando—when
cuanto, -a—how much
cuantos, -as—how many
cuanto tiempo—how long
cuarenta—forty
cuarto, m—room
cuarto, -a—fourth
cuatro—four
cuchillo, m—knife
cuello, m—neck, collar

**cuenta, f**—bill
**cuero, m**—leather
**cuerpo, m**—body
**cueva, f**—cave
**cuidado, m**—care, careful, watch out, look out
**cuidadosamente**—carefully
**cuidadoso, -a**—careful, cautious
**culpa, f**—guilt, fault, blame
**culpable**—guilty
**cumpleaños, m**—birthday
**cuñada, f**—sister-in-law
**cuñado, m**—brother-in-law
**cuota, f**—quota
**cura, m**—priest
**curva, f**—curve

### CH

**chaleco, m**—vest
**chalupa, f**—launch, small vessel, boat, canoe
**chamaco** (slang)—youngster, boy, kid
**chamarra, f**—sweater
**chamba, f** (slang)—work, job
**chancla, f**—old shoe, slipper
**chaparral, m**—low brush
**chaparro, -a**—short
**chapo** (slang)—short
**chaqueta, f**—jacket
**charco, m**—pool, puddle, waterhole
**chato, -a**—flat-nosed, pug-nosed
**chavalo** (slang)—youngster, boy, kid
**chico, -a**—small
**chiva, f** (slang)—bundle, personal item
**chivo, -a**—goat
**chofer, m**—chauffeur, driver
**choque, m**—wreck
**chorizo, m**—sausage
**chubasco, m**—squall, storm

### D

**de**—of, from, about, as
**debajo (de)**—under, beneath, below
**décimo, -a**—tenth
**declaración, f**—statement
**de cualquier modo**—any way
**de día**—by day
**dedo, m**—finger
**delante (de)**—in front, before, ahead
**delgado, -a**—thin, slender, lean
**delito, m**—crime, offense
**de manera que**—in order that
**demasiado, -a**—too much
**demasiados, -as**—too many
**de noche**—by night, at night
**dentista, m-f**—dentist
**dentro (de)**—within, inside
**de nuevo**—again
**de otra manera**—otherwise, (in) another way
**de otro modo**—otherwise, (in) another way
**dependiente, m-f**—clerk
**deporte, m**—sport
**deportivo**—sporting
**de que color**—what color
**de quien, -es**—whose
**derecho, -a**—right, straight
**desconocido, -a**—stranger, unknown
**descripción, f**—description
**desde**—since, from
**desierto, m**—desert
**despacio**—slow, slowly
**después (de)**—after, later, next, then
**detalle, m**—detail
**de todo modos**—anyhow, anyway
**detrás (de)**—behind, after, back
**¡de veras!**—really!
**de vez en cuando**—from time to time
**día, m**—day
**diablo, m**—devil
**día de descanso, m**—day off, day of rest
**día de fiesta, m**—holiday
**diario, m**—daily newspaper
**diario, -a**—daily
**diciembre**—December
**diente, m**—tooth
**diez**—ten
**difícil**—difficult, hard
**dificultad**—difficulty, trouble
**dinero, m**—money
**dirección, f**—direction, address
**disgusto, m**—argument, disagreement
**dispuesto, -a**—willing
**distrito, m**—district
**doble**—double

doctor, -a—doctor
documento, m—document
dólar, m—dollar
dolor, m—pain, ache
doméstico, -a—domestic
domicilio, m—domicile, abode, home
domingo, m—Sunday
donde—where
droga, f—drug
dueño, -a—owner
dulce, m—candy, sweet
durante—during
duro, -a—hard, difficult (slang)

## E

ébano, m—ebony
eco, m—echo
edad, f—age
edificio, m—building
educación, f—education
ejemplo, m—example
ejercicio, m—exercise
ejército, m—army
el—the
el año pasado—last year
el año que viene—next year
elección, f—election
el mes pasado—last month
el mes que viene—next month
elote, m—corn (fresh)
embajada, f—embassy
empleado, -a—employee
empleo, m—employment, work
en—in, on, at
en contra de—against
en cuanto—as far as
enemigo, -a—enemy
enero—January
enfermera, f—nurse
enfermo, -a—sick, ill
en frente—in front
enojado, -a—angry, mad
en punto—sharp (on the dot)
en seguida—immediately
entero, -a—whole
entonces—then
entrada, f—entry, entrance
entre—between, among
en vez de—instead of
equipaje, m—baggage
esa—that
escopeta, f—shotgun
escuela, f—school
ese—that
eso—that (neuter)
esos, -as—those
espalda, f—back (of body)
español, m—Spanish (language)
español, -a—Spanish, Spaniard
esperanza, f—hope
espía, m-f—spy
espinaca, f—spinach
esposa, f—wife
esposo, m—husband
esquina, f—corner
esta—this
está bien—okay, all right
estación, f—season
estación de, f—. . . . station
estado, m—state, status
Estados Unidos, m—United States
estafeta, f—post office
esta noche—tonight
este—this
este, m—east, orient
estómago, m—stomach
esto—this (neuter)
estos, -as—these
estudiante, m—student
evidencia, f—evidence
examen, m—test, examination
excitado, -a—excited
excusado, m—restroom, toilet
extranjero, -a—stranger, alien, foreigner

## F

fábrica, f—factory
fácil—easy
facilmente—easily
faja, f—belt, girdle
falda, f—skirt
falso, -a—false
familia, f—family
farmacia, f—pharmacy
fe, f—faith
febrero—February
fecha, f—date
fe de bautismo, f—baptismal certificate
federal, m—federal
feliz—happy

feo, -a—ugly
ferrocarril, m—railroad
fianza, f—bail, bond
fichera, f—B-girl, hostess (slang)
fiesta, f—fiesta, party
filoso, -a—sharp
flaco, -a—skinny, thin, lean, slender
flojo, -a—loose, lazy (slang)
fondo, m—bottom, slip
forma, f—form
francés, -a—French
franco, -a—frank, off duty
frazada, f—blanket
freno, m—brake, bridle
frente, f—forehead
frijol, m—bean
frío, m—cold
frío, -a—cold
frontera, f—border
fuego, m—fire
fuera—out, outside
funda, f—holster, pillow case
furgón, m—boxcar
fusil, m—rifle

### G

gallina, f—hen, chicken
gallo, m—rooster, cock
ganado, m—cattle, herd, livestock
ganancia, f—gain, earning
garage, m—garage
garita, f—sentry box, entrance gate, port of entry (slang)
garantía, f—guarantee
gastos, m—expenses
gato, -a—cat
gavilán, m—hawk
generalmente—generally, usually
gente, f—people
gobierno, m—government
gorra, f—cap
grande—large, big
granero, m—granary
gris—gray
grupo, m—group
guajalote, m—turkey
guante, m—glove
guapo, -a—handsome
guardavacas, m—cattleguard
guerra, f—war
guerra mundial, f—world war

### H

había—there was, there were
¿había?—was there?, were there?
hace—ago
hacendado, m—farmer
hacia—toward
hacienda, f—farm
hacha, f (el)—axe
hambre, f (el)—hunger
hasta—until, as far as, up to, to
hay—there is, there are
¿hay?—is there?, are there?
hermana, f—sister
hermano, m—brother
hermoso, -a—beautiful
herradura, f—horseshoe
herramienta(s), f—tools
herrero, m—blacksmith
hierba, f—weed, herb
hija, f—daughter
hijastro, -a—stepchild
hijo, m—son
hijo -a ilegítimo -a—illegitimate child
hijo -a natural—illegitimate child
hilo, m—thread, string
hogar, m—home
hola—hello
hombre, m—man
hombro, m—shoulder
honda, f—sling, wave
hondo, -a—deep
honesto, -a—honest
hora, f—hour, time
hotel, m—hotel
hoy—today
hoy día—nowadays
hoyo, m—hole
huarache, m—sandal
huelga, f—strike
huella, f—track, print, impression
huellas de los dedos, f—fingerprints
huellas digitales, f—fingerprints
huero, -a—blonde
hueso, m—bone
huésped, m—guest, host
huéspeda, f—guest, hostess
huevo, m—egg
hule, m—rubber
huracán, m—hurricane

## I

idéntico, -a—identical
identificación, f—identification
iglesia, f—church
igual—same
ilegal—illegal
ilegalmente—illegally
importante—important
imposible—impossible
impresión, f—impression
incidente, m—incident
inglés, m—English, Englishman
inglés, -a—English
injusto, -a—unjust
inmigración, f—immigration
inocente—innocent
inspector, m—inspector
inteligente—intelligent
internacional—international
intestino, m—intestine
íntimo, -a—intimate
investigación, f—investigation
invierno, m—winter
izquierdo, -a—left

## J

jamás—never
jamón, m—ham
jefe, m—chief, boss, leader
jornalero, m—day-laborer, manual laborer
joven, m-f—young person
joven—young
joyas, f—jewels, jewelry
joyería, f—jewelry shop
joyero, m—jeweler
jueves, m—Thursday
juez, m—judge
juicio, m—trial
julio—July
junio—June
junta, f—meeting
junto(s), -a(s)—together
jurado, m—jury
juramento, m—oath
justicia, f—justice
justo, -a—just, upright

## L

la, -s—the
labio, m—lip
labor, f—field, work
lado, m—side
ladrillo, m—brick
ladrón, m—thief, robber
lana, f—wool
lancha, f—launch, boat, barge
lápiz, m—pencil
largo, -a—long
la semana pasada—last week
la semana que viene—next week
lástima—shame, pity
lavandera, f—laundress, washerwoman
lazo, m—lasso, lariat
leche, f—milk
lechería, f—dairy, dairy farm
lechero, m—milkman
legal—legal
legalmente—legally
legumbre, f—vegetable
lejos—far
lengua, f—tongue
lentes, m—eyeglasses
leña, f—firewood
ley, f—law
libertad, f—freedom, liberty
libra, f—pound
libre—free
licencia, f—license
líder, m—leader
liebre, f—jackrabbit
lima, f—lime, file
límite, m—limit
limón, m—lemon
limpio, -a—clean
lindo, -a—pretty, cute
línea, f—line
listo, -a—ready
local—local
loco, -a—mad, crazy
lodo, m—mud
loma, f—hill
lo más pronto posible—as soon as possible
lo que—that which, what
luego—then, next
luego que—as soon as
lugar, m—place, location
lumbre, f—fire
luna, f—moon
lunar, m—mole
lunes, m—Monday

luz, f—light
luz de mano, f—flashlight

### LL

llama, f—flame
llano, m—level ground
llanta, f—tire
llave, f—key
llegada, f—arrival
lleno, -a—full
llorón, -a—crybaby
lluvia, f—rain

### M

madrastra, f—stepmother
madre, f—mother
madrina, f—godmother
madrugada, f—dawn, wee hours of the morning, early morning
maestro, -a—teacher
maíz, m—corn (dry), maize
mal—badly
maleta, f—suitcase
malo, -a—bad, sick, ill, mean
mamá, f—mamma, mom, mother
manera, f—manner, fashion, way
mano, f—hand
mantequilla, f—butter
manzana, f—apple, block (city)
mañana—tomorrow
mañana, f—morning
mapa, m—map
máquina, f—machine
maquinaria, f—machinery
maquinista, m-f—machinist
mar, m—sea
marca, f—mark, sign
margen, m—margin
marido, m—husband
marijuana, f—marijuana
marinero, m—sailor
marrano, -a—hog, pig
martes, m—Tuesday
marzo—March
más—more
mas—but
masa, f—dough
más tarde—later
mayo—May
mayor, m—older, oldest
mayordomo, m—foreman
mecánico, m—mechanic
medalla, f—medal, medallion
media, f—hose, stocking
medianoche, f—midnight
médico, m—doctor
medio, -a—half
mediodía, m—noon, midday
mejilla, f—cheek
mejor—better, best
mendigo, m—beggar
menos—less, minus, except
mentira, f—lie
mercado, m—market, market place
mero, -a (slang)—real
mes, m—month
mesa, f—table
metal, m—metal
método, m—method
mexicano, -a—Mexican
miembro, -a—member
mientras—while
miércoles, m—Wednesday
migra (slang), f—Border Patrol
milagro, m—miracle
milpa, f—cornfield, maize field
milla, f—mile
mina, f—mine
minero, m—miner
minuto, m—minute
mirada, f—glance
misa, f—mass (church)
mismo, -a—same
mochila, f—knapsack, bedroll
mocho, -a—maimed, mutilated
moda, f—fashion, mode, custom
modo, m—method, manner
moho, m—rust, moss, mold
mojado, -a—wet, wetback (slang)
molino de viento, m—windmill
moneda, f—money
montaña, f—mountain
monte, m—high brush, mountain
moreno, -a—brunette, swarthy, dark
mosca, f—fly
mosquito, m—mosquito
mostaza, f—mustard
motivo, m—motive
motor, m—motor
mozo, m—bus boy, young chap, lad
muchacha, f—girl
muchacho, m—boy

mucho, -a—much, a great deal of, a lot of, too much
muchos, -as—many, too many
muebles, m—furniture
muerte, f—death
muerto, -a—dead
muestra, f—sample
mujer, f—woman
mujer de pie, f—mistress
mula, f—mule
muleta, f—crutch
munición(es), f—ammunition
municipio, m—municipality
mundo, m—world
muñeca, f—wrist, doll
música, f—music
músico, m—musician
muy—very

## N

nacimiento, m—birth
nación, f—nation
nacional—national
nacionalidad, f—nationality
nada—nothing, anything
nada más—just, only
nadie—nobody, no one, anyone, anybody
nana, f—governess, child's nurse
naranja, f—orange
naranjo, m—orange tree
narcótico, m—narcotic
nariz, f—nose
nativo, -a—native
navaja, f—knife, penknife, pocketknife
Navidad, f—Christmas
necesario, -a—necessary
negocio, m—business
negro, -a—black
nervioso, -a—nervous
ni—neither, nor
nieto, -a—grandchild
nieve, f—snow
ningún(o)-a—none, not any
niño, -a—child
no—no, not
noche, f—night
Nochebuena, f—Christmas Eve
no más—just, only
nombre, m—name
nombre de pila, m—Christian name
noria, f—well
norte, m—north
noticia(s), f—news, notice
noveno, -a—ninth
novicio, -a—novice, trainee
noviembre—November
novio, -a—sweetheart
nuera, f—daughter-in-law
nueve—nine
nuevo, -a—new
número, m—number
nunca—never, not ever

## O

obrero, m—worker
o(b)scuro, -a—dark
octavo, -a—eighth
octubre—October
ocupación, f—occupation
ocupado, -a—occupied, busy
ocho—eight
odio, m—hate
oeste, m—west
ofensa, f—offense
oferta, f—offer
oficial, m—officer, official
oficina, f—office
oído, m—(inner) ear
ojalá—God grant
ojo, m—eye
ola, f—wave
ómnibus, m—bus
opio, m—opium
oportunidad, f—opportunity
opuesto, -a—opposite, opposed
oración, f—sentence, prayer
orden, f—order, mandate
oreja, f—(outer) ear
organización, f—organization
oriental—oriental, eastern
oriente, m—orient, east
origen, m—origin
original—original
orilla, f—border, margin, shore, bank
oro, m—gold
oso, -a—bear
otoño, m—autumn, fall
otra vez—again
otro, -a—another, other
oveja, f—sheep, ewe

## P

padrastro, m—stepfather
padre, m—father, priest
padrino, m—godfather
página, f—page
país, m—country
paisano, m—fellow countryman
paja, f—straw
pájaro, m—bird
palabra, f—word
paloma, f—dove
pan, m—bread
panadería, f—bakery
panadero, m—baker
pantalones, m—trousers, pants
panza, f—belly
panzón, -a—large bellied, big belly
pañuelo, m—handkerchief
Papa, m—Pope
papá, m—dad, father
papa, f—potato
papalote, m—windmill, kite
papel, m—paper
paquete, m—package
para—in order (to), for, by, to
para que—what for
pared, f—wall
pariente, -ta—relative
párpado, m—eyelid
parque, m—ammunition, park
partera, f—midwife
pasado mañana—day after tomorrow
pasaje, m—passage, fare
pasaje de ida y vuelta, m—round trip fare
pasaje redondo, m—round trip fare
pasaporte, m—passport
paso, m—step, pass
pastel, m—cake
patituerto, -a—deformed (leg)
patizambo, -a—bow-legged
pato, -a—duck
patria, f—homeland
patrón, -a—boss, chief
patrullero, m—patrol inspector
pecho, m—chest
pelea, f—fight
película, f—film (movie)
peligro, m—danger
peligroso, -a—dangerous
pelo, m—hair
pelota, f—ball
peluca, f—wig
peluquería, f—barber shop
peluquero, m—barber
peor—worse
pequeño, -a—small, little
pera, f—pear
perezoso, -a—lazy
periódico, m—newspaper
permanente—permanent
permiso, m—permit, permission
pero—but
perro, -a—dog
persona, f—person
pesado, -a—heavy
pesca, f—fishing
pescado, m—fish
pescador, m—fisherman
pescuezo, m—neck
peseta, f—quarter (coin)
peso, m—Mexican dollar
pestaña, f—eyelash
petaca, f—trunk
pez, m—fish
pícaro, -a—rascal, rogue
pie, m—foot
piel, f—skin, hide
pierna, f—leg
pila, f—battery, holy-water basin
piloto, m—pilot
pintor, -a—painter
piso, m—floor
pista, f—trail
pistola, f—pistol
pizarra, f—blackboard
pizarrón, m—blackboard
pizca, f—harvest season, picking season
pizcador, m—picker
placa, f—badge, license plate
planta, f—plant
plata, f—silver
plato, m—plate
plaza, f—plaza, square
pleito, m—fist fight
plomero, m—plumber
plomo, m—lead
pluma, f—pen
pobre—poor
poco, -a—little (amount)
pocos, -as—few
policía, m—policeman

policía, f—police force
pollo, m—fryer (chicken)
poniente, m—west
por—for, through, by
por dondequieira—everywhere
por eso—for that reason, therefore, that's why, so
por favor—please
por fin—finally, at last
por fuera—on the outside
porque—because
por que—why
por supuesto—of course
portamoneda, f—billfold
portero, m—porter
por todas partes—everywhere
posible—possible
potrero, m—pasture, meadow
pozo, m—hole, well
precio, m—price
preciso, -a—precise, necessary
pregunta, f—question
presa, f—dam
presencia, f—presence
presente—present
preso, -a—prisoner
primavera, f—spring
primer nombre, m—first name, given name
primer(o), -a—first
primo, -a—cousin
prisión, f—prison
prisionero, -a—prisoner
problema, m—problem
proceso, m—process
producto, m—product
profesor, -a—professor
promesa, f—promise
prontito—quickly, right away
pronto—quick, soon, right away
propiedad, f—property
propósito, m—purpose
prostitución, f—prostitution
prostituta, f—prostitute
próximo, -a—next
prueba, f—proof, test
pueblo, m—town
puente, m—bridge
puerco, m—pork, pig
puerta, f—door
puerto, m—port, harbor
puerto de entrada, m—port of entry (sea)
pues—well
puesto, m—stand, stall
pulgada, f—inch
pulgar, m—thumb
pulmón, m—lung
pulsera, f—bracelet
pulso, m—pulse, wrist
puntual—punctual
puro, -a—pure
puro, m—cigar

## Q

que—that, who, than
¿qué?—what?
queja, f—complaint
quemada, f—burn, burn scar
queso, m—cheese
querida, f—mistress
quien, -es—who, whom
quijada, f—jaw
quincena, f—fortnight
quinto, -a—fifth
quizá(s)—maybe, perhaps

## R

rábano, m—radish
radio, m-f—radio
ranchero, m—rancher, farmer
rancho, m—farm, ranch
rápido, -a—rapid, fast
raro, -a—rare
rata, f—rat
ratero, -a—thief, robber
ratito, m—very short time (slang)
rato, m—short time
ratón, m—mouse
raza, f—race
razón, f—reason
real—real
reata, f—rope, riata, lariat
recámara, f—bedroom
recibo, m—receipt
record, m—record
regalo, m—present, gift
reloj, m—clock, watch
relojero, m—watchmaker
remo, m—oar
rengo, -a—cripple, lame

**renta, f**—rent
**repaso, m**—review
**repollo, m**—cabbage
**reporte, m**—report
**res, f**—beef, steer
**respeto, m**—respect
**respuesta, f**—answer, response
**restaurante, m**—restaurant
**retrato, m**—picture
**reunión, f**—reunion
**revista, f**—magazine
**revólver, m**—revolver
**rico, -a**—rich
**rifle, m**—rifle
**río, m**—river
**rincón, m**—corner, nook
**riñón, m**—kidney
**rodilla, f**—knee
**rojo, -a**—red
**ropa, f**—clothes, clothing
**ropa interior, f**—underwear
**rosa, f**—rose
**rótulo, m**—sign
**rubio, -a**—blonde
**ruido, m**—noise
**rumbo, m**—way, direction, route

## S

**sábado, m**—Saturday
**sabiduría, f**—knowledge
**sabotaje, m**—sabotage
**sacerdote, m**—priest
**saco, m**—coat
**sal, f**—salt
**sala, f**—living room
**sala de espera, f**—waiting room
**salario, m**—salary
**salchicha, f**—wiener, sausage
**salida, f**—departure, exit
**salud, f**—health
**salvaje**—wild
**san, m**—saint
**sandalia, f**—slipper, sandal
**santo, -a**—saint
**sartén, f**—frying pan
**sastre, m**—tailor
**seco, -a**—dry
**secretario, -a**—secretary
**seda, f**—silk
**según**—according to
**segundo, -a**—second
**seguro, -a**—sure, certain, safe
**seguro que sí**—sure, of course
**seis**—six
**semana, f**—week
**senda, f**—path, footpath
**sendero, m**—path, trail
**sentencia, f**—sentence
**seña, f**—sign, mark
**señor, m**—Mr., sir, man
**señora, f**—Mrs., woman, lady
**señorita, f**—Miss, lady (unmarried)
**septiembre**—September
**séptimo, -a**—seventh
**servicio, m**—service, restroom, toilet
**sexto, -a**—sixth
**sí**—yes
**si**—if
**siempre**—always
**siempre que**—provided (that)
**si es así**—if so, if that is so
**siete**—seven
**siglo, m**—century
**signo, m**—sign, mark
**siguiente**—following, next
**silvestre**—wild
**silla, f**—chair
**sin**—without
**sin embargo**—nevertheless
**sino**—but, only
**sirvienta, f**—servant, housemaid
**sitio, m**—place, location, site
**sobre, m**—envelope
**sobre**—on, upon
**sobrenombre, m**—nickname, alias
**sobretodo, m**—overcoat
**sobrina, f**—niece
**sobrino, m**—nephew
**soga, f**—rope, riata, lariat
**sol, m**—sun
**soldado, m**—soldier
**solo**—alone
**sólo**—only
**soltero, -a**—single
**sombrero, m**—hat
**sordo, -a**—deaf
**sospechoso, -a**—suspicious
**suave**—soft
**sucio, -a**—dirty
**suegra, f**—mother-in-law
**suegro, m**—father-in-law
**sujeto, m**—subject

**sueldo, m**—salary, wages
**suelo, m**—floor, ground
**suerte, f**—luck
**suéter, m**—sweater
**suficiente**—sufficient, enough
**sur, m**—south

### T

**tabaco, m**—tobacco
**tahur, m**—gambler
**tal**—such
**talabartero, m**—leather worker, beltmaker
**talón, m**—stub, heel
**tal vez**—perhaps
**taller, m**—shop
**tamaño, m**—size
**también**—also, too, likewise, as well
**tampoco**—either, neither
**tan**—as, so
**tan pronto como**—as soon as
**tanque, m**—tank, waterhole
**tanto, -a**—as much, so much
**tantos, -as**—as many, so much
**tarde, f**—afternoon, evening
**tarde**—late
**tarea, f**—homework, task
**tarjeta, f**—card
**taxi, m**—taxi
**taza, f**—cup
**té, m**—tea
**teatro, m**—theater
**techo, m**—roof
**teléfono, m**—telephone
**televisión, f**—television
**televisor, m**—television set
**temprano**—early
**tenedor de libros, m**—bookkeeper
**tequila, m**—tequila
**tercer(o), -a**—third
**territorio, m**—territory
**terreno, m**—territory, land
**terrible**—terrible
**testigo, -a**—witness
**testimonio, m**—testimony
**tez, f**—complexion
**tía, f**—aunt
**tibio, -a**—warm
**tiempo, m**—time, weather
**tienda, f**—store
**tierra, f**—earth, native country, land, soil
**tinta, f**—ink
**tío, m**—uncle
**tiro, m**—shot
**título, m**—title
**tiza, f**—chalk
**tobillo, m**—ankle
**tocante a**—about, concerning
**tocayo, -a**—namesake
**tocino, m**—bacon
**todavía**—still, yet
**todavía no**—not yet
**todo, -a**—all, everything
**todo el mundo**—everybody
**todos, -as**—everybody, all
**tomate, m**—tomato
**tormenta, f**—storm
**toro, m**—bull
**trabajador, -a**—worker, employee
**trabajo, m**—work, employment, job
**tractor, m**—tractor
**tractorista, m**—tractor driver
**traidor, -a**—traitor
**traje, m**—suit
**traje de baño, m**—swimsuit
**tranvía, m**—street car, trolley
**tren, m**—train
**tren de carga, m**—freight train
**tres**—three
**trigo, m**—wheat
**trigueño, -a**—swarthy, dark
**tripa, f**—gut, intestine
**trique, m (slang)**—personal belonging, personal item
**triste**—sad
**troca, f (slang)**—truck
**troque, m (slang)**—truck
**troquero, m (slang)**—truck driver
**tuerto, -a**—one-eyed
**turista, m-f**—tourist

### U

**últimamente**—lately
**último, -a**—last
**un, -a**—a, an, one
**único, -a**—only
**uniforme, m**—uniform
**universidad, f**—university
**unos, -as**—few, some
**unos, -as cuantos, -as**—a few
**unos, -as pocos, -as**—a few
**uña, f**—fingernail, toenail

útil—useful
uva, f—grape

### V

vaca, f—cow
vacaciones, f—vacation
vagón, m—wagon
válido, -a—valid
valiente—brave
vamos a ver—let's see
vapor, m—ship, steam
vaquero, m—cowboy
vara, f—twig, pole, rod
varios, -as—several, various
vaso, m—(drinking) glass, tumbler
vecindad, f—neighborhood
vecino, -a—neighbor
veliz, m—valise, suitcase
venado, m—deer
ventana, f—window
verano, m—summer
verdad, f—truth, true
¿verdad?—right?
verde—green
verdura, f—vegetable
vereda, f—trail, path
vestido, m—dress
vez, f—time
vía, f—way, route, railroad track
viaje, m—trip, journey
vida, f—life
vidrio, m—glass
viejo, -a—old
viento, m—wind
viernes, m—Friday
villa, f—village, country house
vino, m—wine
violencia, f—violence
visa, f—visa
visible—visible
visita, f—visit
vista, f—sight, view
viuda, f—widow
viudo, m—widower
voluntariamente—voluntarily
voluntario, -a—volunteer, voluntary

### Y

y—and
ya—already
ya mero—almost
ya no—no more, not anymore, no longer
yarda, f—yard
yegua, f—mare
yerba, f—weed, herb
yerno, m—son-in-law

### Z

zancudo, m—mosquito
zapatería, f—shoe shop
zapatero, m—cobbler
zapato, m—shoe
zorillo, -a—skunk
zorro, -a—fox

## SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY, LEGAL AND CRIMINAL

accessory—**cómplice**
accomplice—**cómplice**
accountability—**responsabilidad**
accuse—**acusar**
acquired rights—**derechos adquiridos**
acquittal—**absolución, descargo**
act—**acto, hecho**
addict—**adicto**
adjourn—**levantar o aplazar la sesión**
advocate (v.)—**abogar, apoyar**
affidavit—**declaración jurada**
aforementioned—**ya mencionado, susodicho**
alcoholic—**alcohólico**
alias—**sobrenombre, alias**
alter—**alterar**
anarchist—**anarquista**
anarchy—**anarquía**
annul—**anular, cancelar**
appeal (v.)—**apelar**
appellate court—**tribunal de apelaciones**
application—**petición, aplicación**
arraignment—**emplazo, emplazamiento**
arson—**incendio malicioso**
attorney—**licenciado, abogado**
Attorney General—**Procurador General**

bearer—**portador**
Board of Immigration Appeals—**Tribunal de Inmigración de Apelación**

change of venue—**traslado de jurisdicción**
charge—**cargo,** (v.) **acusar**
charity—**caridad**
Commissioner of Immigration—**Comisionado de Inmigración**
commit (v.)—**cometer**
complain—**quejarse**
complaint—**queja**
conceal—**esconder**
condone—**perdonar**
congress—**congreso**
congressman—**diputado, congresista**
contagious—**contagioso**
convict—**convicto, reo**
counsel—**consejero, abogado**
crime (major)—**crimen**
crime (lesser)—**delito**
crime involving moral turpitude—**crimen u ofensa de depravación moral**
crowd—**gentío**
custody—**custodia, guardia**
customs duties—**derechos de aduana**

decree—**decreto**
defendant—**demandado, acusado**
defendant—**defensor**
delinquent—**delincuente**
detention facility—**campo de detención, corralón** (slang)
deputy—**delegado, comisario, diputado**
disorderly conduct—**conducta contra la moral pública, desorden público**
district attorney—**fiscal**

embassy—**embajada**
embezzle—**hurtar, apropiar**
embezzler—**estafador**
enabling act—**ley de autorización**
encarcerate—**encarcelar**
enforce—**hacer cumplir, ejecutar**
engage—**ocupar, emplear**
enroll—**matricular, inscribir**
equity—**equidad**
evidence—**evidencia**
execution—**ejecución**
exile—**destierro**
exile (person)—**desterrado**
exile (v.)—**desterrar**
expire—**expirar, cumplirse el plazo, vencer**

feeble-minded—**falto de inteligencia**
felony—**felonía**
forge (v.)—**falsificar, forjar**
fraud—**fraude, engaño**
fraudulent—**fraudulento**
free under bond—**libre bajo fianza**
gang—**pandilla**
grace period—**período de espera**
Grand Jury—**Gran Jurado**
guarantee—**garantía**
guilt—**culpa**
guilty—**culpable**

harbor (v.)—**abrigar, resguardar, defender**
hearing—**audiencia**

indict (v.)—**acusar por el Gran Jurado**
ineligible—**no tener las calificacciones, ineligible**
information—**información**
immoral—**inmoral**
immunity—**inmunidad**
imprison—**encarcelar**
inadmissible—**no admisible, inadmisible**
invalid—**inválido**
investigator—**investigador, indagador**

killer—**aesino**
knowledge—**ciencia, conocimiento**

leader—**líder, jefe**
legislature—**legislatura**
liable—**sujeto, expuesto**
loathsome—**aborrecible**
malice—**malicia**
mandate—**mandato**
mania—**manía, locura**
mercy—**clemencia, perdón**

misdemeanor—**crimen de menor cuantía, delito, crimen menor**
mistreat—**maltratar**
moral turpitude—**depravación moral**
murder—**asesinato, (v). asesinar**
murderer—**asesino**

natural born citizen—**ciudadano por nacimiento**
naturalization certificate—**certificado de ciudadanía o naturalización**
naturalized citizen—**ciudadano naturalizado**
notary public—**escribano o notario público**

offense—**ofensa**
officer in charge—**jefe, oficial encargado**
order to show cause—**orden para mostrar (enseñar) causa**
overdue—**sobrevencido, demoroso**
overthrow—**vencer, derrotar**

parole—**perdón condicional**
pardon—**absolución**
pauper—**pobre, indigente**
penalty—**pena, castigo**
petition—**petición**
plaintiff—**demandante**
plea—**súplica**
political—**político**
polygamy—**poligamia**
post bond—**poner fianza**
prosecute—**enjuiciar**
psychopathic—**personalidad psicopática**
public charge—**carga pública**
public welfare—**bienestar público**
publish—**publicar**

reasonable doubt—**duda razonable**
refugee—**refugiado**
reprieve—**suspensión temporal**
respondent—**respondedor**
revolution—**revolución**
right of appeal—**derecho de recurso**
rule to show cause—**orden de presentar motivos justificantes**

search—(person) **esculcar;** (vehicle) **registrar**
search and seizure—**registro e incautación**
search warrant—**orden de registro**
sentence—**condena, sentencia**
sexual—**sexual**
shoplifting—**ratería de tiendas**
Special Inquiry Officer—**Juez de la Inmigración, Oficial de Interrogaciones Especiales**
stillbirth certificate—**certificado de natimuerto**
subject—**sujeto**
subpoena—(v.) **citar, comprendo**
suit—**pleito, acción judicial**
summons—**citación**
supporting documents—**documentos justificativos**
surrender (v.)—**ceder, entregar**
suspect (v.)—**sospechar, suponer**
suspect—**persona sospechada**
suspension—**suspensión**
suspicion—**sospecha, desconfianza**
surname—**apellido**

term—**plazo, término**
threat—**amenaza**
trial—**juicio**
trial attorney—**abogado de la inmigración**

U.S. Attorney—**Fiscal Federal**
U.S. Marshal—**Mariscal Federal**

venue—**jurisdicción**
verbatim—**al pie de la letra**
verdict—**veredicto, fallo**
verification—**verificación**
verify—**verificar, averiguar, comprobar**
versus—**contra**
vest—**dar posesión**
violate—**violar, infringir**
void—**nulo, inválido**

waiting list—**causas en espera**
warning—**advertencia, aviso**
warrant—**comprobante, autorización**
wedlock—**matrimonio**
whom it may concern—**a quien pueda interesar**
wilful—**premeditado, intencional**
witness (mat.)—**testigo material**
written notice—**aviso escrito**

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1968 O—295-037